

5.04.1

THE  
ANATOMY  
OF THE  
Humane Body  
A B R I D G'D:

OR,

A Short and Full View of all  
the PARTS of the BODY.

Together with

Their several Uses, drawn from their  
Compositions and Structures.

---

By JAMES KEILL, M.D,

---

*Quibus autem expositis, satis docuisse videor, Hominis  
natura quanto omnis anteiret Animantibus, ex quo  
debet intelligi; nec figuram, situmque Membrorum,  
nec ingenii mentisque vim saltem effici potuisse for-  
euna. Cicero de Nat. Deor. lib. 2.*

---

The Second Edition, Revis'd.

---

LONDON,  
Printed for Ralph Smith, under the Royal  
Exchange; and William Davis, at the  
Black-Bull in Cornhill. M DCC III.



406

TO THE  
Very Learned and Ingenious  
**EDWARD. TYSON,**  
Doctor of Physick,  
Fellow of the College of *Physi-  
cians*, and of the *Royal Society*,  
Physician to *Bethlem-Hospital*,  
A N D  
Lecturer of *ANATOMY* at the  
*Surgeons-Hall* in *LONDON*.

S I R,

I Would scarce have ad-  
ventured the Publishing  
of the following Sheets,  
if after a particular and  
A 2. care-

## The Epistle

careful Perusal you had not  
been pleased to Advise and  
Encourage me to it ; and  
I desire the Favour of pre-  
fixing your Name to them,  
that the World may know  
your Approbation, which  
will sufficiently secure me  
from Censure, and recom-  
mend them as containing  
something Exact and Use-  
ful : For your Skill and  
Judgment in this Sub-  
ject is well known, and  
abundantly demonstrated by  
those Treatises with which  
you have oblig'd the World,  
and the Publick Lectures,  
by which you have adorned  
the

## DEDICATORY.

the Honourable and Useful  
Office you have held for  
several Years.

But yet I am not so  
Vain as to think there are  
no Slips nor Errours in this  
little Treatise, nor will I im-  
pose so far upon your Good-  
ness and Civility as to ex-  
pect your Patronage of them :  
I only hope, that after your  
Example, others will be so  
Candid and Civil as to pass  
them over.

I do also readily accept  
of this Occasion, to pay  
my. most hearty Acknowledg-

A 3      ment.

## The Epistle, &c.

ments for your private Favours and Civilities. And as I have a true Esteem for your Merits, so I shall be always ready to shew my self,

Your most Humble and

most Obliged Servant,

James Keill.

---

---

A

# T A B L E

## O F T H E

## Chapters and Sections.

---

### C H A P. I.

#### Of the Component, External and Common Parts of the Body.

Sect. I.	<i>O F the Component Parts,</i>	p. 1
Sect. II.	<i>O F the External Parts,</i>	2
Sect. III.	<i>O F the Common Parts or Teguments of the Epidermis or Cuticula,</i>	11
Sect. IV.	<i>O F the Skin,</i>	12
Sect. V.	<i>O F the Hair,</i>	15
Sect. VI.	<i>O F the Fat,</i>	16
Sect. VII.	<i>O F the Membrana, Adiposa, Carnosa, Communis, and Propria Musculorum,</i>	18

---

### C H A P. II.

#### Of the Lower Belly.

Sect. I.	<i>O F the Muscles in General,</i>	20
Sect. II.	<i>O F the Muscles of the Lower Belly,</i>	23

Sect.

## A T A B L E of the

Sect. III. <i>Of the Peritonæum,</i>	26
Sect. IV. <i>Of the Omentum,</i>	28
Sect. V. <i>Of the Oesophagus,</i>	30
Sect. VI. <i>Of the Stomach,</i>	33
Sect. VII. <i>Of the Intestines and Mesenteries,</i>	37
Sect. VIII. <i>Of the Lacteal Veins, Receptacle of the Chyle, and Thoracick Duct,</i>	46
Sect. IX. <i>Of the Lymphatick Vessels,</i>	49
Sect. X. <i>Of the Glands in General,</i>	53
Sect. XI. <i>Of the Pancreas, and Succus Pancreaticus,</i>	56
Sect. XII. <i>Of the Liver and Gall-Bladder,</i>	58
Sect. XIII. <i>Of the Spleen,</i>	64
Sect. XIV. <i>Of the Kidneys, Glandulæ Renales, Ureters and Bladder,</i>	67
Sect. XV. <i>Of the Parts of Generation proper to Men,</i>	72
Sect. XVI. <i>Of the Parts of Generation proper to Women,</i>	82
Sect. XVII. <i>Of the Generation of the Foetus; Of the Umbilical Vessels; Of the Placenta; Of the Posture of the Foetus, and term of Delivery,</i>	93

---

### C H A P. III.

#### Of the Thorax, or Middle Cavity.

Sect. I. <i>Of the Breasts,</i>	100
Sect. II. <i>Of the Diaphragma, or Mid-riff,</i>	102
Sect.	

## Chapters and Sections.

Sect. III. <i>Of the Pleura, Mediastinum, and Thymus,</i>	104
Sect. IV. <i>Of the Pericardium, Heart, and its Parts,</i>	106
Sect. V. <i>Of the Lungs,</i>	119
Sect. VI. <i>Of the Larynx,</i>	127

---

## C H A P. IV.

### Of the Upper Cavity, or Head.

Sect. I. <i>Of the Frontal and Occipital Muscles, and of the Peri- cranium,</i>	137
Sect. II. <i>Of the Dura and Pia Mater,</i>	133
Sect. III. <i>Of the Cerebrum and Cere- bellum,</i>	139
Sect. IV. <i>Of the Eyes,</i>	153
Sect. V. <i>Of the Ear,</i>	166
Sect. VI. <i>Of the Nose,</i>	173
Sect. VII. <i>Of the Mouth and Tongue,</i>	176

---

## C H A P. V.

### Of the Bones.

Sect. I. <i>Of the Bones in general,</i>	186
Sect. II. <i>Of the Cartilages and Liga- ments in general,</i>	190
Sect. III. <i>Of the Articulation of the Bones,</i>	191
Sect. IV. <i>Of the Bones of the Cranium,</i>	195
Sect.	

A TABLE of the

Sect. V. Of the Bones of the Upper-Jaw,	205
Sect. VI. Of the Lower-Jaw,	210
Sect. VII. Of the Teeth,	212
Sect. VIII. Of the Spine and Vertebræ,	215
Sect. IX. Of the Ossa Innominata,	224
Sect. X. Of the Ribs,	226
Sect. XI. Of the Breast-Bone,	229
Sect. XII. Of the Claviculæ and Scapulæ,	231
Sect. XIII. Of the Bones of the Arm and Hand,	233
Sect. XIV. Of the Bones of the Thighs, Legs, and Feet,	239
Sect. XV. Of the Nails, and Number of the Bones,	246

---

C H A P. VI.

Of the Muscles.

Sect. I. Of the Muscles of the Face,	249
Sect. II. Of the Muscles of the Head,	254
Sect. III. Of the Muscles of the Neck,	256
Sect. IV. Of the Muscles of the Scapula,	257
Sect. V. Of the Muscles of Respiration, and of the Benders and Extensors of the Vertebræ,	258

Sect.

## Chapters and Sections.

Sect. VI. Of the Muscles of the Humerus, or Arm,	263
Sect. VII. Of the Muscles of the Cubitus and Radius,	266
Sect. VIII. Of the Muscles of the Palm of the Hand and of the Wrist,	269
Sect. IX. Of the Muscles of the Fingers,	271
Sect. X. Of the Muscles of the Thigh,	275
Sect. XI. Of the Muscles of the Leg,	278
Sect. XII. Of the Muscles of the Foot,	280
Sect. XIII. Of the Muscles of the Toes,	283
<i>A Table of the Muscles,</i>	285

---

## C H A P. VII.

### Of the Nerves, Veins and Arteries.

Sect. I. Of the Nerves in General,	296
Sect. II. Of the Nerves which come immediately out of the Skull,	297
Sect. III. Of the Nerves which come out between the Vertebræ,	305
Sect. IV. Of the Arteries in general,	310
Sect. V. Of the Trunk of the Aorta Ascendens,	312
Sect. VI. Of the Aorta Descendens,	315
Sect. VII. Of the Veins in general,	322
Sect.	

## A T A B L E, &c.

Sect. VIII. <i>Of the Cava Descendens, or Superior,</i>	323
Sect. IX. <i>Of the Venæ Subclaviæ, Jugulares, and their Branches,</i>	325
Sect. X. <i>Of the Veins of the Arms and Hands,</i>	327
Sect. XI. <i>Of the Trunk of the Cava Ascendens, or Inferior,</i>	329
Sect. XII. <i>Of the Vena Porta,</i>	333

---

---

## E R R A T A.

Page 8. Line 31. for *Intestines*, read *Interstices* ;  
p. 9. l. 15. for *Extremities*, r. *Extremity* ; p. 10.  
l. 5. r. *Mons Luna* ; p. 18. l. 22. r. *Solution of Continuity* ; p. 38. l. 14. for *inspect*, r. *inject* ; p. 63.  
l. 7. *dele at* ; p. 80. l. 8. r. *on each side* ; p. 84. l. 18.  
for *it hath*, r. *and have* ; *ibid.* l. 19. for *it hath*, r. *they have* ; p. 94. l. 20. for *two*, r. *no* ; *ibid.* l. ult. for  
*Spadeo*, r. *Spayed* ; p. 107. l. 27. r. *Coronary Vessels* ;  
p. 199. l. ult. r. *is a Production* ; p. 184. l. 28. r. *co-racohyoïdans* ; p. 204. l. 10. r. *Canals* ; p. 207. l. 25.  
r. *fifth Pair of Nerves* ; p. 208. l. 22. r. *pass* ; p. 214.  
l. ult. r. *requires* ; p. 228. l. 22. r. *conduce* ; p. 232.  
l. 21. r. *Coraccides* ; p. 246. l. 9. r. *Metacarpus* ;  
p. 249. l. 7. r. *Corrugator* ; p. 250. l. 3. and 13. for  
*fourth*, r. *second*.

[ 1 ]

# THE ANATOMY OF THE Humane Body ABRIDG'D.

## CHAP. I.

### Of the Component, External, and Common Parts of the Body.

#### SECT. I.

##### Of the Component Parts.

**I** Purposely pass over the various Definitions of a Part; as being of no great Use; and for the same reason I will not trouble the Reader with the several Divisions which Anatomists make of the Parts of the Humane Body. It is sufficient to know, that all the Parts are made up of Threads or Fibres, of which there be different kinds;

B

for

All the Parts  
are made up  
of Fibres.

## *Of the External Parts.*

for there are some soft, flexible, and a little elastick, and these are either hollow like small Pipes, or spongious and full of little Cells, as the nervous and fleshy Fibres ; others there are more solid flexible, but with a strong Elasticity or Spring, as the Membranous and Cartilaginous Fibres : and a third sort are hard and inflexible, as the Fibres of the Bones. And of all these, some are very sensible, and others are destitute of all sente ; some so very small as not to be easily perceived ; and others, on the contrary, so big as to be plainly seen.

Now these Simple Fibres do first constitute the Substance of the Bones, Cartilages, Ligaments, Membranes, Nerves, Veins, Arteries and Muscles. And again, by the various Texture and different Combination of some or all these Parts, the more compound Organs are framed ; such as the Lungs, Stomach, Liver, Legs and Arms, the summ of all which make up the Body.

## S E C T. II.

### *Of the External Parts.*

*The Division  
of the Body.*

THE Body is divided into Four Principal Parts, which are, the Head, the Thorax, the Abdomen, and the Extremities, *viz.* the Arms and Legs.

The

## Of the External Parts.

3

The External Parts of the Head or Upper Cavity, are, the Face, and the *Calva* or Hairy Scalp. The Parts of the Face, are, the Brow, the Ears, the Eyes, the Cheeks, the Nose, the *Philtrum* and its sides, the Mustaches, the Lips, the Mouth, and the Chin. The Parts of the Hairy Scalp, are, the *Sinciput* or Fore-head, under which lieth the *Os Frontis*; it reaches to the *Spissitia*, or meeting of the Coronal with the Sagittal Suture. The *Vertex* or Crown of the Head, is where the Hairs turn, as it were, round a Point; and from thence to the first Joint of the Neck is the *Oc-ciput* or Hind-head. The Temples or the Sides of the Hairy Scalp, under which are the Crotaphite Muscles, the *Offa Petrosa*; they reach to the *Sutura Squamo-sa*.

*The External  
Parts of the  
Head.*

The External Ear is divided into Two *Parts*, of which the upper is call'd *Pinna* or the Wing; the lower *Fibra* or Lobe. The Parts of the *Pinna* are the *Helix*, which is the outward circle or border of the Ear; the *Anti-helix*, which is the Semi-circle within the other: The lower end of this Semi circle makes a little Prominence, which is call'd *Anti-tragus*; because there is another Prominence just opposite to it, which is call'd *Tragus*, by reason of some Hair that is upon it. The Cavity made by the *Anti-helix* is call'd

B 2

*Concha*;

## Of the External Parts.

**Concha** : The Hole in the middle of the Ear, which goes to the *Tympanum*, is call'd *Alvearium*.

### Of the Eyes.

The External Parts of the Eyes, are the *Supercilia* or Eye-brows, the *Canthus Internus* or the Great Angle, where the *Caruncula Lachrymalis* is ; the *Canthus Externus* or the Little Angle, which is the furthest from the Nose ; the *Palpebra* or the Upper and Lower Eye-lids ; the *Cilia*, which are little Cartilages on the Edge of the Eye-lids ; the Hairs planted upon the *Cilia* in form of a *Pallisado* ; the *Puncta Lachrymalia*, which are two little Holes near the big Angle of the Eye. The *Orbite* is a Cavity made by the Bones, in which the *Globe* of the Eye is contained, with its six *Muscles* ; the *Tunica Conjunctiva*, which is the White of the Eye ; the *Cornea*, which is the Transparent Part of the Eye ; the *Iris* or Rain-bow, in the middle of which is the *Pupilla* or Sight.

### Of the Nose, Lips, &c.

The Nose has its *Spina* or Ridge ; it reaches from the Brow to the Cartilage *Acromion*. The *Acromion* reaches from the end of the Spine to the *Globulus* or tip of the Nose. The *Nostrils* are the Passages into the Nose. The *Ale* or *Wings* of the Nose are the sides of the *Nostrils*. The *Columna* is the little fleshy Portion, which reaches from the tip of the Nose to the *Philtrum* ; it divides

vides the Nostrils. The *Philtrum* is the little Canal which comes from the lower part of the Nose upon the upper Lip. The Cheeks reach from the lower Eye-lids to the Lips. The *Mentum* or Chin is the fore-part of the Lower-Jaw. The Lower-Jaw reaches from the two Ears to the Chin inclusively. The Lips are the muscular Flesh at the entry of the Mouth ; their External Part is call'd *Prolabium*, and that which is tinctured red, *Prostomia*. The Gums are the Flesh which cover the lower part of the Teeth.

The Neck reaches from the Head to *of the Neck*, the *Clavicle* or Chanel Bones. Its Parts are the Throat, which is its fore-part, along which descends the *Trachea Arteria* or Wind-pipe, and the *Oesophagus* or Gullet. The *Pomum Adami* is the Eminence which appears in the upper part of the Throat. The *Cervix* is the hind-part of the Neck ; its upper-part is call'd *Lophia*, the middle *Fossa*, and the lower *Epomis*. The *Parotides* make the upper and lateral-part of the Neck, *Terthra* the middle, and *Paralophia* the lower. All that lies betwixt the Basis of the Neck and the *Diaphragma* or Midriff, that is, down to the last Ribs, is call'd the *Thorax* or Chest. The fore-part of the *Thorax* is call'd the Breast ; in it are the *Clavicle* or Chanel-Bones ;

*Of the External Parts of the Thorax or Middle Cavity.*

## Of the External Parts.

and the *Sternum* or Breast-Bone, which is in the middle ; it begins at the *Clavicle*, and terminates in the *Cartilago Xiphoides* or Sword-like Cartilage. Under the *Sternum* lies the *Mediaстinum*, and the Heart in its *Pericardium*. The *Mammae* or Dugs are two round Tumours which appear upon the fore-part of the Chest, under which are situated part of the Ribs, the *Pleura*, and the Lungs : There stands upon their Centre a little Protuberance call'd *Papilla* or Nipple, which is encompassed with a reddish circle call'd *Areola*. The hollow in the middle of the Breast, below the Dugs, is called *Scrobiulus Cordis*. The hinder-part of the *Thorax* is call'd the Back, composed of Twelve *Vertebrae* or Joints, and Two *Scapulae* or Shoulder-blades, which are the two upper Parts of the Back on the sides of the *Vertebrae*. The lateral Parts of the *Thorax* are call'd *Peristerna*.

Of the External Parts of the Abdomen or Lower Belly.

The Lower Belly extendeth from the *Cartilago Xiphoides* to the *Os Pubis* ; the fore-part is call'd *Abdomen*, and the hind-part the Back-side. The *Abdomen* is divided into Upper, Middle, and Lower Parts. The Upper reaches from the *Cartilago Xiphoides* till within two Fingers breadth above the Navel ; it is call'd *Epigastrium*, and its two sides *Hypochondria* : The Right covers the greatest part

part of the Liver ; the Left the Spleen, part of the Stomach, and *Colon*. The Middle-part of the *Abdomen* is only two Fingers breadth above, and as much below the Navel ; it is call'd *Regio Umbilicalis* ; its middle is call'd *Umbilicus* or Navel. Under the middle of this Region lies all the *Intestinum Jejunum*, and part of the *Ilium*. The sides of this Region are call'd by *Glisson*, *Epicolica*, because they cover the *Colon*. Under the Right is contain'd the Right Kidney, part of the *Colon* and *Jejunum* : under the Left is contained the left Kidney, with part of the *Colon* and *Jejunum*. The Lower-part of the *Abdomen* reaches from the Umbilical Region to the lower-part of the *Os Pubis* ; it is call'd the *Hypogastrium* ; it covers the Bladder, Womb, and the *Rectum* or Straight-Gut. The Lower-part of the *Hypogastrium* is call'd *Pecten* or *Regio Pubis* ; its sides *Inguina* or Groins. The sides of the *Hypogastrium* are call'd *Ilia*, either because they contain almost all the Gut *Ilium*, or because they terminate at the lower-part of the *Os Ilium*. The *Inguina* or Groins are below the *Ilia*, where there is a part of the Muscle *Cremaster*, with the Productions of the *Peritoneum*. The hind-part of the *Abdomen* is call'd the Back-side ; it reaches from the last Ribs to the Extremity of the *Os Sacrum*. It is divided

B 4. into

## Of the External Parts.

into two parts, the upper is call'd the Small of the Back, its sides the Loins ; the middle of the lower part is call'd *Radius* ; at its lower end is the *Anus*, and its sides the *Nates* or *Buttocks*. The *Perineum* is the space between the *Anus* and the *Scrotum* in Men, and the *Vulva* in Women.

*of the External Parts of Generation in Men.*

The External Parts of Generation proper to Men are the *Yard* and the *Scrotum*. The Extremity of the *Yard* is call'd the *Glans* : The *Preputium* or Fore-skin is the Skin doubled which covers the *Glans* like a Hood. The *Frenum* or Bridle is a little whitish-colour'd Ligament which ties the Fore-skin and the *Glans* together beneath. The edge of the *Glans* where the *Preputium* begins, is call'd *Corona* or *Crown*. The *Urethra* is the Canal which runs along the under side of the *Yard*, through which the Seed and the Urine pass. The *Rapha* or *Ridge* is a Line which running along the under-side of the *Yard*, divides the *Scrotum* and *Perineum* in two ; its length is from the *Frenum* to the *Anus*. It is not ordinarily cut, in the Operation for the Stone ; first, because it's harder than any other part of the Skin there, and then you cut upon the Intestines of the Muscles, which make the re-union the difficulter. The *Scrotum* is the Purse which contains the two Testicles.

The

## Of the External Parts.

9

The External Parts of Generation proper to Women, are the *Vulva* or great Chink situated below the *Os Pubis*, and covered with Hair; above this, there is a little Swelling made by some Fat under the Skin, which is call'd *Mons Veneris*. The *Labia* or Lips of the great Chink are only the Skin swelled by some Fat underneath; these being a little separated, there appear the *Nymphae*, one on each side of the Chink; they are two small pieces of Flesh resembling the Membranes that hang under the Throats of Pullets. In the Angle of the great Chink next the *Os Pubis*, is the Extremities of the *Clitoris*, covered with a little Hood of the Skin call'd *Preputium*. A little deeper, in the same side of the *Vulva*, there is a little Hole, which is the Orifice of the Neck of the Bladder. On the opposite side, next the *Anus*, are *Glandula Myrtiformes*, situated in the *Fossa Magna* or *Navicularis*, and in this Angle of the Chink there is a Ligament call'd the Fork, which is torn in the first Birth.

The Arm is from the Joint of the Shoulder to the Elbow, which is the place where we bend our Arm. The Fore-arm is from the Elbow to the Wrist or *Carpus*. The Hand is all that which is betwixt the Wrist and the ends of the Fingers. The Parts of the Hand

B 5 are

## Of the External Parts.

are the *Metacarpus*, which is from the Wrist to the root of the Fingers ; the outside, which is the Back of the Hand ; and the inside, which is the Palm of the Hand ; the *Mons Veneris* is the fleshy part of the Hand nigh the Thumb ; the Finger next the Thumb is call'd the *Index* or Fore-finger, then follows the Middle, the Ring-finger, and the Little one. Upon the Extremities of the Fingers are the Nails ; the white Spot which is at the root of the Nails is call'd *Onyx*.

*of the External Parts of the Thigh and Leg.*

The Thigh is from the Haunch to that Joint of which the Fore-part is call'd the Knee ; the Back-part the Ham.

The Leg is from the Knee to the *Tarsus* ; its Fore-part is call'd the Shin, and the Back-part the Calf of the Leg : The Eminences which are at the Extremity nigh the *Tarsus*, are call'd the Ankles of the Foot ; they are two, the Outer and Inner : The *Tarsus* is from the Ankles to the *Metatarsus*, or breadth of the Foot, which goes to the root of the Toes : The upper-part of the Foot is call'd Instep, the under-part the Sole of the Foot ; the Toes are Five in number, with their Nails.

S E C T.

## S E C T. III.

Of the Common Parts or Teguments of the  
Epidermis or Cuticula.

THE first and outermost Covering of the Body is the *Cuticula* or Scarf-skin, by the Greeks call'd *Ἐπιδέρμις*. This is that soft Skin which rises in a Blister, upon any burning, or the application of a Blistering Plaster. It sticks close to the surface of the true Skin, to which it is also tied by the Vessels which nourish it, though they are so small as not to be seen. When we examine the Scarf-skin with a Microscope, it appears to be made up of several Lays of exceeding small Scales, which cover one another, more or less, according to the different thickness of the Scarf-skin in the several Parts of the Body. In the Lips, where the Scales appear plainest, because the Skin is thinnest, they only, in a manner, touch one another. Now these Scales are either the Excretory Ducts of the Glands of the true Skin, as, I think, is apparent in Fishes, or else these Glands have their Pipes opening between the Scales. *Ewenhoeck* reckons that in One Cuticular Scale there may be Five hundred Excretory Channels, and that a Grain of Sand will cover

Two

*Of the Skin.*

Two hundred and fifty Scales; so that One Grain of Sand will cover One hundred twenty five thousand Orifices through which we daily perspire.

The Scales are often glewed to one another by the grosser parts of our insensible Transpiration, hardening upon them by the heat of our Body, which carries off the more volatile Particles. The Humour which is afterwards separate by the Glands of the Skin, being pent in between the Scales, causes frequent Itchings; and where the Matter has been longer pent up, small Pimples; for the removing of which, Nature directs us to those wholesome Remedies of frequent Rubbing, and Washing or Bathing.

The Use of the Scarf-skin is to hinder the Bodies which we touch from making a too exquisite and painful impression on the Nerves of the Skin, and to keep them always soft and moist.

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Skin.*

Parts of  
Skin.

WE remark in the Skin, the Scarf-skin being raised, Three Parts. The First is, an infinite number of *Papilla Pyramidales*; they are the Ends of all the Nerves of the Skin, each of which are enclosed in two or three Covers of a Pyramidal Figure, and these Covers are each

each above another. They may be easily seen and separated in the Skin of an Elephant, and in the Skin of the Feet of several other Animals. Between these *Papilla* are an infinite number of Holes, which are nothing but the Orifices of the Excretory Vessels of the Miliary Glands underneath. The Second Part is a Web of Nervous Fibres and other Vessels differently interwoven, it is always covered with a mucous Substance, which serves to support and moisten the *Papille Pyramidales*, and it is the *Parenchima* or that part of the Skin that the Parchment is made of. The Third Part is an infinite number of Miliary Glands, about which there is much Fat ; they lie under the other two Parts, they separate the matter of Sweat and insensible transpiration. Each Gland receives a Nerve and Artery, and sends out a Vein and Excretory Vessel, which last passes through the other two Parts to the *Cuticula*, for the discharging the Body of this Matter, and for the moistening the *Cuticula* and the *Papille Pyramidales*, that they may not be dry, which would very much hurt the Sense of Touching. Upon the surface of the Skin there are many Parallel Lines, which are cut by as many Parallel ones. These Intersections make spaces of a Rhomboidal figure ; and upon the Ends of the Fingers these Lines

Lines are Spiral. There is a Pore, with a Hair, in the most part of the Intersections ; the more there are of these Lines, and the deeper they are the rougher and the more wrinkled is the Skin. The Skin is six times thicker than the Scarf-skin : And in the Sole of the Foot it is much thicker than in the Face, Hands, and other Parts. In the Summer it is thinner and softer, because the Pores are wider. In the Winter it is more compact and harder, because the Pores are more close ; therefore the Hairs of Beasts stick faster, and Furs made of them are better in that Season. In some the Skin is white, in others black and tauny, which probably comes from the different Colours of the Mucosity which covers the *Parenchima* of the Skin ; for the Fibres of the Skin in all are white, and there is little or no difference in the colour of different Bloods.

*The Use of the Skin.* Its Use is to cover and wrap up all the Parts of the Body, to be the Organ of the Sense of Touching, and the Emunctory of the whole Body ; for through the Glands of the Skin pass not only such Particles of the Vessels as decay by reason of the continual motion of the Blood, but likewise the greatest part of the Liquors which we drink ; which having perform'd part of their office in conveying the Aliments into the Blood, are

are, in the next place, to dissolve the Saline and Terrestrial Particles to be carry'd off through the Glands of the Skin and Kidneys.

Now the Summ of all these Particles strain'd through the Cuticular Glands, is by *Sanctorius* reckon'd to amount to about Fifty Ounces a Day : so that suppose a Man's Body to weigh 160 Pounds, then in 51 Days we perspire a quantity equal to the weight of the whole Body : But in what time, or if ever the whole Substance of the Body is changed, is no easie Matter to determine.

## S E C T. V.

*Of the Hair.*

THE Hair may justly be reckon'd one of the common Teguments of the Body, not only for its Use, but also because it is to be found upon all the Parts of the Body, except the Soles of the Feet, and Palms of the Hands. It grows longest upon the Head, Beard, in the Arm-pits, and about the Privities. When we examine the Hairs with a Microscope, we find that they have each a round bulbous root which lies pretty deep in the Skin, and which draws their Nourishment from the surrounding Humours ; that each Hair consists of five or

or six others wrapt up in a Common Te-  
gument or Tube. They grow as the Nails  
do, each part near the root thrusting  
forward that which is immediately  
above it, and not by any Liquor run-  
ning along the Hair in Tubes, as Plants  
grow. Their different Colours depend  
much upon the different temperaments  
and quality of the Humours that nourish  
them. The Use of the Hairs is for a  
Covering and Ornament to the Body.  
Whatsoever the Efficient Cause may be  
why a Man has a Beard, and a Woman  
none, it is certain, the Final Cause is for  
the distinguishing the Male from the  
Female Sex, which otherwise could  
hardly be known, if both were dress'd  
in the same Habit.

## S E C T. VI.

## Of the Fat.

Underneath the Skin there lies a Mem-  
brane call'd the *Membrana Adiposa*,  
which, by the help of a Microscope,  
appears to be composed of an infinite  
number of fine transparent Vesicles or  
Bladders, into which the Blood-Vessels  
that are spread upon them deposite the  
oily and sulphureous part of the Blood,  
which in these membranous Cells we  
call Fat.

*Malpighius*

*Malpighius* mentions a Net of small <sup>The Vessels of</sup> *Vessels*, which he calls *Ductus Adiposi*, <sup>the Fat.</sup> because they are full of Fat; these, he supposes, bring the Fat into the Cells; but he could never discover from whence they take their rise. There are also a number of little Glands, which are accompanied with Lymphatick Vessels, which carry back any Serosity that is superfluous.

The Fat is to be found immediately under the Skin, in all the Parts of the Body, except in the Fore-head, Eye-lids, Lips, upper part of the Ear, Yard, and *Scrotum*. In some the Vessicles of the *Membrana Adiposa* are so full, that the Fat is an Inch or an Inch and an half thick, and in others they are almost flat, containing little or no Fat. There are two sorts of Fat, one white, <sup>Two sorts of</sup> or rather Yellow, soft, and lax, which is easily melted, call'd *Pinguedo*; another white, firm, brittle, and which is not easily melted, call'd *Sevum* or Tallow. Some reckon the Marrow of the Bones for a third sort of Fat.

The chief Use of the Fat is to blunt <sup>The Use of</sup> and sweeten the too great sharpness and Acrimony of the Salts which are in the Blood. It is likewise of Use sometimes for the Nourishment of the Body. Hence it is that some Creatures live, during a whole Winter, without any other Food.

It

It serves also to moisten and couple the Parts, for facilitating their Motion ; to fill up the Interstices of the Parts, that the Skin may be smooth and beautiful ; to defend the Body against external Cold ; and, in fine, to hinder too great a dissipation of the Spirits.

## S E C T. VII.

*Of the Membrana Adiposa, Carnosa, Communis, and Propria Musculorum.*

*What a Membrane is.*

A Membrane is a Web of several sorts of Fibres interwoven, for the covering and wrapping up of some Parts. Their membranous Fibres give them an Elasticity, whereby they can contract and closely grasp the Parts they contain, and their nervous Fibres give them an exquisite sense, which is the cause of their contraction ; therefore they can scarcely suffer the sharpness of Medicines, and they are difficultly united, where there is a solution, or continuity, or loss of their Substance. In their texture there are a number of small Glands, which separate an humour fit for moistening the Parts which they contain. Those that cover the solid Parts, are properly call'd Membranes ; and they have their particular Names, as the *Perritonaum*, which wraps up all that is contained in the *Abdomen* ; the *Pleura* that

*A distinction  
of Membranes.*

that which is in the *Thorax*; the *Périosteum* the Bones, and the *Pericardium* the Heart. Those which form the Coats of Vessels, and which contain the Humours, as those of the Veins, Arteries, Stomach, Bladder, Intestines, Testicles, &c. are call'd Tunics or Coats: And those which cover and embrace the Brain, as the *Dura*, and the *Pia Mater*, are call'd Meninges. Of all these kinds of Membranes, some are thin, and some are thick; and the same Membrane is thick in some places, and thin in other places, as in the *Membrana Adiposa*, which is thicker in the Neck than in any other part of the Body. The Use of the Membranes is to cover and wrap up the Parts; to strengthen them; to save them from external injuries; to preserve the Natural Heat; to join one Part to another; to sustain small Vessels, and the Nerves which run through their Duplicatures; to stop the returning of the Humours in their Vessels, as the Valves stop the returning of the Blood in the Veins and Heart; of the Chyle in the Lacteals and Thoracick-Duct; and of the *Lympha* in the Lymphatick Vessels.

By the *Membrana Adiposa*, is most commonly understood that part of it only which lies next the Flesh, and which contains but little Fat in its Cells;

*The Use of the  
Membranes.*

*The Membrana  
Adiposa,  
and Carnosa.*

Cells ; and therefore appearing more Membranous than the rest, is said to be the Basis of the *Cellula Adiposa*. And even some part of this hath been taken by Anatomists for the *Membrana Carnea*, upon the account of its Redness ; for here the Blood-Vessels lie very thick, the Vesicles not being distended with Fat.

Of the Membrana Communis Musculorum.

Of the Membrana Propria Musculorum.

Of the Membrana Communis Vasculorum.

Anatomists do generally assert, That there is a *Membrana Communis Musculorum*, being led into that Mistake by the *Aponeurosis* of several Muscles ; whereas, upon stricter Observation, there is no such thing to be found. The *Membrana Propria Musculorum* is that which covers immediately all and every one of the Fibres of a Muscle, and is closely attached to them. There is another call'd *Membrana Communis Vasculorum*, which is a thin Membrane, and accompanies almost all the Vessels of the Body. All these Membranes receive Veins, Arteries and Nerves from the Parts which are nearest to them.

C H A P.

## C H A P. II.

## Of the Lower Belly.

## S E C T. I.

## Of the Muscles in General.

**A**MUSCLE is a bundle of fleshy and often tendinous Fibres, of which *The Definition of a Muscle.* all in the same Plane are Parallel to one another, and they are all enclosed by one proper Membrane. The Fleshy *Of the Fleshy Fibres.* Fibres compose that Part which is call'd the Body or Belly of the Muscle ; they are red, lax, and spongious, containing a number of small Cavities, they are tied together by a number of small and short Threads, which go from Fibre to Fibre, call'd Membranous Fibres. The Tendinous *Of the Tendinous Fibres.* Fibres compose the two Extremities ; they are call'd the Head and Tail, or the two Tendons of the Muscle ; they are white, hard, compact, and closely bound together, that which makes them less than the Body of the Muscles. In every Tendon there are many tendinous Fibres, as there are fleshy Fibres in the body of the Muscle ; so that every fleshy Fibre answers, at both ends, to a tendinous Fibre, to which they are always join'd

*Of the Muscles in General.*

join'd obliquely, making equal and alternative Angles.

*The Division  
of Muscles.*

Muscles are either Simple or Composed : The Simple have all their Fibres Parallel, and in the same Direction. The Composed have the Fleshy Fibres of several Planes crossing one another, or of different Directions ; and they may be divided into as many Simple Muscles as there are Planes, whose Fibres have different Directions. Each Plane resembles a *Rhomboides*, or Lozenge. The Strength of a Muscle consists in the Union of many Fibres. The Motion of a Muscle is always towards its Centre. The Tendons are sometimes double and triple, as the *Biceps* and *Triceps*. Sometimes several Muscles join in one Tendon, as the *Tendo Achillis*. Sometimes one Muscle has two Bellies, as the *Digastricus*.

We find also Muscles without Tendons, as the *Quadratus* of the Fore-Arm, and several of the Face, Tongue, and Lower-Jaw ; and they are only inserted into the *Periosteum* : whereas those that have Tendons are inserted into the body of the Bone. There are others which have only Tendons at one end, as may be seen in the *Myology*. This makes me suspect that Tendons are only for the convenience of having a great number of Fibres inserted about a small Bone. Those who would have a more particular Description

## Of the Muscles of the Lower Belly.

23

tion of a Muscle, may consult Steno, and Borelli.

The Muscles have Nerves, Veins, Arteries, and Lymphaticks, as other Parts ; their Use is to bend and extend, and to perform all the motions of the Parts.

### S E C T. II.

#### Of the Muscles of the Lower Belly.

Having raised the Skin and Fat, the Muscles of the Lower Belly appear, which are Five Pair in number : The First of which that presents it self, is the *Obliquus Externus* or *Descendens* ; it takes its Origination from the two last true, and the five false Ribs, by five or six Digitations, the four uppermost of which lie between the teeth of the *Serratus Anticus Major* ; its Fibres, descending obliquely, are inserted all along the *Linea Alba* under the *Musculi Recti*, to the upper and fore-part of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and to the fore-part of the *Os Pubis*. It has a large *Aponeurosis*, or tendinous Expansion, which covers both its self, and the *Musculi Recti*. The *Linea Alba* is a Line which reaches betwixt the *Cartilago Xiphoides* and the *Os Pubis*, made by the union of the Tendons of the Oblique and Transverse Muscles, dividing the *Abdomen* in two in the

*Of the Muscles of the Lower Belly.*

the middle. This Muscle receives a twig of a Nerve from the Intercostals at each of its Digitations.

*Obliquus Internus.*

The Second Pair is the *Obliquus Ascendens* or *Internus*, whose Fibres are disposed in a contrary manner, crossing the former obliquely; they arise with a large and fleshy beginning, from the Circumference of the *Ilium*, from the *Os Pubis*. Above they are fixed to the Cartilaginous Part of the False Ribs, and they are inserted all along the *Linea Alba*.

*Transversalis.*

The Third Pair is the *Transversalis*; it lies under the two former; it arises from the *Cartilago Xiphoides*, from the Extremities of the False Ribs, from the transverse *Apophyses* of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins; it is fixed to the inner side of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and is inserted in the *Os Pubis*, and *Linea Alba*.

These Three Muscles unite their Tendons as they approach the *Linea Alba*; they are pierced in the middle of the *Linea Alba*, for the Passage of the Umbilical Vessels. They are also pierced above the *Os Pubis*, for the passage of the Spermatick Vessels in Men, and the round Ligaments of the Womb in Women. These Holes are not opposed to one another; that which is in the *Transversal* is highest, that in the *Obliquus Ascendens* is a little lower, and that in the *Obliquus Descendens* lowest. It is this last

last which is only cut in the Operation of the *Bubonocele*; it has a fine and thin Membrane that closes exactly its ring or hole, through which the Vessels pass.

The Fourth Pair, which is cover'd with the *Aponeurosis* of the *Obliqui*, is the *Musculus Rectus*; it arises from the *Sternum*, the Extremity of the last two true Ribs, and goes straight down the fore-part of the *Abdomen* to be inserted in the *Os Pubis*. This Muscle has three or four Innervations, which, when the Muscle acteth, serve to render the compression equal, which otherwise would be all in the middle. It has Veins and Arteries, which creep on its inside, from the Mamillary and the Epigastrick Vessels, which communicate, that the Blood may return by the Mamillary Veins, when the Passage is stopt by the Epigastrick, which are compressed in Women big with Child.

The Fifth Pair is the *Pyramidalis*, so *Pyramidalis* call'd because of their Figure: they rise with a fleshy beginning, from the outer and upper part of the *Os Pubis*, and growing narrower and narrower, are inserted in the *Linea Alba*, sometimes near to the Navel. Sometimes one, and sometimes both of these Muscles are wanting. The Use of all the Muscles of the Lower-Belly is to compress all the Parts that it contains, for the filtration and distribution *The Use of these Muscles.*

*Of the Peritonæum.*

tion of the Chyle, for the expulsion of the Excrements, and to hinder the Air from rushing in by its Elasticity, and distending the Stomach and Guts; all of them help the expiration, by making the *Diaphragma* mount up; and the *Obliqui* help to pull down the Ribs, for the contracting of the *Thorax*; they help to bend the Trunk forwards. By the admirable contrivance of their Fibres decussating one another, every point of the Lower Belly is sufficiently compress'd, so as that the Intestines can slip no where from the Compression.

## S E C T. III.

*Of the Peritonæum.*

*Its Description.*

Immediately under the Muscles of the Lower Belly appears the *Peritonæum*. It is a thin and soft Membrane, which encloses all the Bowels contained in the Lower Belly, covering all the inside of its Cavity. Its External Superficies is unequal where it adheres to the Transverse Muscles. The Internal is very smooth and polish'd. It has a number of small Glands that separate a Liquor, which supples the Intestines, and facilitates their motion. When these Glands are obstructed, the *Peritonæum* grows thick, as may be seen in several Dropsies.

The

The upper-part of this Membrane covers the Midriff, to which it closely adheres; the fore-part of it sticks to the Transverse Muscles, and *Linea Alba*; the lower-part of it to the *Os Pubis*; and the back-part of it to the *Os Sacrum*, and *Vertebræ* of the Loins. 'Tis a Double Membrane, and contains in its Duplicatures the Umbilical Vessels, the Bladder, the Ureters, the Kidneys, and the Spermatick Vessels, to all which it gives a Membrane, as also to the Liver, Spleen, Stomach, Intestines, and Womb.

Its External *Lamina* has two Productions, like to two Sheaths, which pass through the Rings of the Oblique and Transverse Muscles in the Groin, for the passage of the Spermatick Vessels in Men, and for the round Ligaments of the Womb in Women. These Productions being come to the Testicles in Men, dilate and form the *Tunica Vaginalis*. The Internal *Lamina*, which is here very thin, having accompanied the External Productions a little way, cleaves close to the Spermatick Vessels, and round Ligaments of the Womb.

The *Peritonæum* has Veins and Arteries from the *Phrenicae*, from the Mammillary, the Epigastrick, and often from the Spermaticks. Its Nerves are of those which are distributed in the Muscles of the *Abdomen*. It has likewise a few Lymphatic-

*Of the Omentum.*

ticks, which discharge themselves into the Iliack Glands. By the elasticity of its Fibres, it easily dilates and contracts in Respiration and Conception. If it breaks, it causes a Rupture either in the Groin or Navel. Its Use is to contain the Bowels of the *Abdomen*, and to give each of them an outer coat.

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Omentum.*

*Its Description.*

WHEN the *Peritonaeum* is cut, as is usual, and the Cavity of the *Abdomen* laid open, the *Omentum* or Cawl presents itself first to view. This Membrane covers the greatest part of the Guts; for one end of it running a-cross the upper part of the *Abdomen*, is tied to the hollow side of the Liver, to the backside of the *Duodenum*, to that part of the *Colon* that lies under the Stomach, to the Back and Spleen; from thence descending below the Navel, it turns up again and ascends as high as the Stomach, where its other Extremity is again tied to the hollow side of the Liver, to the forepart of the *Duodenum* and *Pylorus*, to the bottom of the Stomach and to the Spleen. Thus floating double upon the surface of the Guts, it was by the Greeks call'd *Ἐπίπλωον*. Sometimes it descends as low as the *Os*

*Os Pubis*, within the Productions of the *Peritoneum*, causing an *Epiplocele*.

Now the Cawl is a moist delicate and fine Double Membrane, interlarded, for the most part, with a great deal of Fat which lines each side of its Blood-Vessels. These are Veins from the *Porta*, call'd *Gastro-epiplois dextra & sinistra*, Arteries from the *Cæliaca*. The Intercostal Nerve, and the *Par Vagum*, send it several twigs of Nerves. All these Vessels, with some small Glands, accompanying one another, spread their Branches very curiously upon the Cawl, and even to the minutest twig ; they run between two lines of Fat, which are bigger or smaller, according to the weight of the Cawl. It has been sometimes found to weigh Fifty Pounds, but ordinarily it does not much exceed Half a Pound. Where there are no Vessels, the Membrane of the Cawl is very fine, transparent, and pierced with a number of small holes.

They give several Uses to the Cawl, as *its Use* to cover the bottom of the Stomach and the Intestines ; that by cherishing their heat, it may promote Digestion, and help the Concoction of the Chyle ; to strengthen and sustain the Vessels which go from the Spleen to the Stomach, Intestines, Pancreas, and Liver, to keep a store of the Fat, that it may be received by the Veins and Lymphaticks, for the

## Of the Oesophagus.

Use we have spoken of ; to grease the Superficies of the Guts, for facilitating their Peristaltick Motion.

### S E C T. V.

#### Of the Oesophagus.

THough the *Oesophagus* and *Ductus Thoracicus* lie not in the Lower Belly ; yet, that I may at once shew the intire Passage of the Aliments from the Mouth to the Blood, I shall describe them both in this Chapter.

*Its Situation.* The *Oesophagus*, or Gullet, is a long, large, and round Canal, which descends from the Mouth, lying all along betwixt the Wind-pipe and the Joints of the Neck and Back, to the fifth Joint of the Back, where it turns a little to the right, and gives way to the *Aorta Descendens*, and both run by one another, till at the ninth the *Oesophagus* turns again to the left, climbs above the *Aorta*, and descending above it, it pierces the Midriff, and is continued to the left Orifice of the Stomach.

*Its Coat.* The Gullet is compos'd of Three Coats. The First and outermost is only a common Membranous Integument, which seems to be a continuation of the *Pleura*.

The Second is thick and fleshy : Its Fibres are truly Muscular. In Brutes, because

because the situation of their Neck con-  
duces little to the descent of the Aliments,  
therefore these Fibres run in two close  
Spiral lines which cross one another. But  
in Men whose Position is Erect, they run  
only a little obliquely from the upper-  
end of the *Oesophagus* to the Stomach,  
into which, by a gentle contraction, they  
easily thrust the descending Aliments.

The Third and last lines the Cavity of  
the Gullet. It's compos'd of white and  
slender Fibres diversely interwoven. At  
its upper end it is continued to the Mem-  
brane that covers the Mouth and Lips,  
therefore, in Vomiting, these Parts are  
affected. Its lower end covers the left  
Orifice of the Stomach two or three  
fingers breadth. The Surface of this Mem-  
brane is besmeared with a soft and slimy  
Substance, which probably comes from  
some small Glands that lie between this  
Coat and the Second.

The upper end of the Gullet is call'd *Pharynx*. It has Two Pair of Muscles of the Pha-  
for its Motion. The First is the *Stylo-<sup>rynx.</sup> Pharyngeus*. This is a small and round  
Muscle, which arises fleshy from the  
root of the *Processus Styloides*, and descend-  
ing obliquely, it is inserted into the sides  
of the *Pharynx*. When this Muscle acteth,  
it pulleth up and dilateth the *Pharynx*,  
in Deglutition.

## Of the Oesophagus.

The Second is the *Oesophagus*. Its Fibres have several Directions; its superiour Fibres arise from the *Processus Pterigoides* of the *Os Sphaenoides*, and from the *Cornua* of the *Os Hyoides*, and run obliquely to the back-part of the *Pharynx*. The Fibres which are below these arise from the sides of the *Cartilago Scutiformis*, and run transversely to the middle of the back-part of the *Pharynx*, where both Superiour and Inferiour Fibres from both sides unite and form a *Tendinous Line*. When this Muscle acts, it draws the back-part of the *Pharynx* to its fore part; by which it not only straitens it for the depressing of the Aliment, but it compresses also the *Tonsilla* which send out their Liquor, which lubricates the Aliment, whereby it glides the more easily down into the *Stomach*.

*Its Glands.*

There are two Glands which are tied on the back-side of the Gullet about the Fifth *Vertebra* of the Back, by the branches of Nerves which come from the Eighth Pair. These two Glands are like two Kidney-beans tied together; they receive Veins and Arteries from the *Coronariae*, and they have Lymphatick Vessels which discharge themselves into the Thoracick Duct. *Bartholine* remarks, that these Glands sometimes swell so big, as to hinder the descent of the Aliments into the *Stomach*.

The

The Gullet at its upper end receives an Artery from the *Aorta*, and it sends a Vein to the *Azygos*: at its lower end it has an Artery from the *Cœliaca*, and it gives a Vein to the *Coronaria* of the Stomach. Its Nerves are from the Eighth Pair.

The Use of the Gullet, is to carry the <sup>Its Use.</sup> Meat from the Mouth into the Stomach, by means of the Muscles of the *Pharynx*, and Fleshy Fibres of the *Gula*, which perform its Peristaltick Motion.

S E C T. VI.

Of the Stomach.

THE Stomach, *Ventriculus*, or *Tæs⁹*, <sup>Its Situation.</sup> lies immediately under the Midriff; the Liver covers a part of its right Side, the Spleen touches it on the left Side, and the *Colon* at its bottom, to which also the Cawl is tied. Its figure resembles <sup>Its Figure.</sup> a Bag-pipe, being long, large, wide, and pretty round at the bottom, but shorter and less Convex on its upper part, where it has two Orifices, one at each end, which are somewhat higher than the middle between them. The left Orifice is call'd *Kæs⁹*, to it the *Oesophagus* is joined. By this Orifice the Aliments enter <sup>Its Orifice.</sup> the Stomach, where being digested, they ascend obliquely to the *Pylorus* or right

## Of the Stomach.

Orifice, which is united to the first of the Intestines. At this Orifice the Tunics of the Stomach are much thicker than they are any where else, and the inmost has a thick and strong Duplicature in form of a Ring, which serves as a Valve to the *Pylorus* when it contracts and shuts.

*Its Coats.*

The Stomach is made of four Membranes or Coats. The First and inmost is made of short Fibres, which stand perpendicularly upon the Fibres of the next Coat; they are to be seen plainly towards the *Pylorus*. When the Stomach is distended with Meat, these Fibres become thick and short. Whilst they endeavour to restore themselves by their natural Elasticity, they contract the Cavity of the Stomach, for the Attrition and Expulsion of the Aliments. This Coat is much larger than the rest, being it is full of Plaits and Wrinkles, and chiefly about the *Pylorus*: These Plaits retard the Chyle, that it run not out of the Stomach before it be sufficiently digested. In this Coat there are also a great number of small Glands which separate a Liquor which besmears all the Cavity of the Stomach; therefore this Coat is call'd *Tunica Glandulosa*.

The Second is much finer and thinner; it is altogether Nervous; it is of an Exquisite Sense, and it's call'd *Nervosa*.

The

The Third is Muscular, being made of straight and circular Fibres ; the straight run upon the upper part of the Stomach, between its superiour and inferiour Orifices ; and the circular run obliquely from the upper part of the Stomach to the bottom. These Fibres, by their Contraction and continual Motion, help the Attrition and Digestion of the Aliments.

The Fourth Tunicle is common ; it comes from the *Peritoneum*.

The Stomach receives Veins from the *Porta*, viz. the *Gastrica*, *Pylorica*, and *Vas Breve*, and branches from the *Gastro-epiplois dextra* & *sinistra*, which are accompanied with branches of the *Arteria Cœliaca*, all which lie immediately under the fourth Coat of the Stomach.

The Eighth Pair of Nerves, or *Par Vagum*, gives two considerable branches to the Stomach, which descending by the sides of the Gullet, divide each into two branches, the External and Internal. The two External branches unite in one, and the Internal do so likewise ; both which piercing the Midriff, form, by a great number of small twigs, upon the upper Orifice of the Stomach, a *Plexus* ; and then the Internal branch spreads it self down to the bottom of the Stomach : and the External branch spreads it self

self upon the inside, about the upper Orifice of the Stomach. This great number of Nerves, which is about the upper Orifice, renders it very sensible, and from them also proceeds the great Sympathy betwixt the Stomach, Head, and Heart ; upon which account *Van Helmont* thought, that the Soul had its seat in the upper Orifice of the Stomach.

The *Plexus Nervosus* of the *Hypochondria* and *Mesenterium* give several branches to the bottom of the Stomach, therefore in Hysterick and Hypochondriack Passions the Stomach is also affected.

*Its Use.* The Use of the Stomach is Digestion, which is the Dissolution or Separation of the Aliments into such minute Parts as are fit to enter our Lacteal Vessels, and circulate with the mass of Blood : or it is the simple breaking of the Cohæsion of all the little *Moleculæ* which compose the Substances we feed upon. Now the principal Agents employed in this Action, are, first, the *Saliva*, the *Succus* of the Glands in the Stomach, and the Liquors we drink, whose chief property is to soften the Aliments, as they are Fluids, which easily enter the Pores of most Bodies, and swelling them, break their most intimate Cohæsions. When the Aliments are thus prepared, their Parts are soon separated

separated from one another, and dissolved into a Fluid with the Liquors in the Stomach, by the continual Motion of its Sides, whose Power in this Action, is, by that great Improver of the true Theory of Physick, the learned *Pitcairne*, demonstrated to be equal to the preflure of 12951 Pound weight: To which if we add the force of the *Diaphragma* and Muscles of the *Abdomen*, which likewise conduce to Digestion, the Summ will amount to 261086 Pound weight. These two Actions we see more clearly in Birds, because they are performed in two Stomachs. In the first, the Corn is only swell'd and soften'd by the Liquor of its Glands, but broken and dissolved in the second, which is compos'd of very strong Muscles, because those of the *Abdomen* and *Diaphragma* are weak, neither do they act upon the Stomach, as in Men.

### S E C T. VII.

Of the Intestines and Mesentery.

WHEN the Aliments are sufficiently dissolved in the Stomach, they are, *What the Guts are.*  
by its Muscular Fibres, thrust out into the *Intestines*, or *Guts*. Now the *Intestines* are a long and large Pipe, which, by several circumvolutions and turnings, reaches from the *Pylorus* to the *Anus*.  
They

*Their Coats.*

They are knit all along the edge of a Membrane call'd the *Mesentery*, and are six times as long as the Body to which they appertain; that the Chyle which escapes the Læsts of one part of the Guts, may be taken up by those in the next. They are compos'd of Three Coats, of which the First and inmost is made up of short Fibres bound together by fine Blood-Vessels, and disposed as those of the Stomach; for the length of a Fibre is the thickness of the Coat. *Leenwenhoeck* first observed these Fibres with his Glasses: but if you carefully inspect the Mesenterick Artery with warm Water, they will separate from one another, and become visible to the naked Eye. They act after the same manner as those of the inner Membrane of the Stomach, for the contracting of the Cavity of the Guts. This Coat being much larger than the others, lies in Wrinkles or Plaits, called *Valvula Conniventes*, which in the Small Guts run in larger Segments of Circles, and are closer to one another, than in the Great Guts. It has likewise a great number of little Glands, which in the Small Guts lie in clusters every where but where they are knit to the Mesentery: In the Great Guts they are much fewer, and are placed at some distance from one another. The Use of these Glands is disputed: Some think that they separate the Slime which besmears

besmears the inside of the Intestines, to defend them against the acrimony of the Bile ; but this, more probably, comes from some remainder of the Chyle. Others take them for the Mouth of the Lacteal Vessels : but there are many Lacteals where there are no Glands. If we consider, that they are most chiefly placed where the Lacteals are most numerous, we cannot but think that they separate a Liquor for diluting of the thick Chyle, that it may the more easily enter the narrow Orifices of the Lacteal Veins.

The Second Coat is made up of Two Orders of Muscular Fibres ; of which one runs straight, according to the length of the Guts ; the other goes round, and its Fibres are more reasonably thought to describe a Spiral Line than Circles. By the successive Motion of the Parts of these two Orders of Fibres the Guts are in a continual Llndulation, which is call'd their *Vermicular*, or *Peristaltick* Motion.

The Third and External Coat is common, it cometh from the *Peritonaeum*.

Though the Intestines be one continued Pipe, yet Anatomists divide it into six Parts, three thin and small, and three thick and great. The three thin and small, are the *Duodenum*, *Jejunum*, and *Ileum*. The *Duodenum* is the first part of the <sup>of the Duodenum.</sup> Intestines ;

Intestines ; it's about twelve fingers breadth long : it is continued to the *Pylorus*, from which turning downwards, it runs under the *Stomach* immediately above the *Vertebrae*, towards the left side, and ends at the first of the windings under the *Colon*. At its lower end there are two Canals which open in its Cavity, one comes from the *Liver* and *Gall-bladder*, call'd *Ductus Communis Choliodochus* ; the other from the *Pancreas*, call'd *Ductus Pancreaticus*. The first brings the *Bile* ; the second the *Succus Pancreaticus* into this Intestine. It differs from the other two in this, that its Passage is straighter, and its Coats thicker.

Of the Jeju-  
num.

The Second is the *Jejunum* ; it begins at the first winding of the Guts under the *Colon*, where the *Duodenum* ended ; and making several turnings and windings, from the right side to the left, and from the left again to the right, it is continued to the *Ileum*, filling all the upper part of the Umbilical Region, being about 12 or 13 hands breadth long. It differs from the *Ileum* only in this, that it hath some more *Vena Lactea*, into which the *Chyle* passing, it is found always more empty, therefore it is call'd *Jejunum* : And the folds of its inner Coat are nearer to one another, and in greater number than in the *Ileum*.

The

The Third and last of the Small Guts *of the Ileum*, is the *Ileum*, it is about 21 Hands breadth long ; it begins where the *Jejunum* ends, and making several turnings and windings, it fills all the lower part of the Umbilical Region, and all the space betwixt the *Ilia*, and is continued to the beginning of the *Colon* at Right Angles ; its Passage is a little narrower than that of the *Jejunum*, and its Coats seem somewhat thinner.

This Intestine, because of its situation, falls easily down into the *Scrotum*, by the Productions of the *Peritonæum*. In it also happens the *Volvulus*, when one part of this Gut enters the Cavity of another.

The Thick and Great Guts are the *Cæcum*, *Colon*, and *Rectum*.

The *Cæcum*, although small, yet is taken *of the Cæcum* for the first of the Great Guts ; but the *Cæcum*, Ancients, who made this Division of the Guts, call'd the beginning of the *Colon* the *Cæcum* ; and what is now call'd *Cæcum*, they call'd *Appendix Ceci*. It is four or five fingers breadth long, and about the bigness of a Swan's Quill. It is call'd *Cæcum*, because it is open only at one end, by which it is tied to the beginning of the *Colon*, to which it seems to be an Appendage ; so that the Excrements go in and come out at the same Orifice. Its other end, which is shut, is

is not tied to the Mesentery, but to the Right Kidney, by means of the *Peritoneum*. Its Use is yet unknown. Some take it for a second Stomach, others for a Receptacle of the Excrements of the *Fœtus*, in which it's always full, till after the Birth. Others say, it contains a ferment, and others the Flatuosity of the Intestines; and others, that it separates a Liquor by some Glands which are in its Cavity; which Liquor serves to harden the Excrements as they pass through the *Colon*.

*of the Colon.* The *Colon* is the greatest and widest of all the Intestines, and about eight or nine hands breadth long. It begins where the *Ileum* ends, in the Cavity of the *Os Ilium* on the right side, from whence ascending by the Kidney of the same side, it passes under the Concave side of the Liver, to which it is sometimes tied, as likewise to the Gall-Bladder, which tinges it yellow in that place; then it runs under the bottom of the Stomach to the Spleen in the left side, to which it's also knit; from thence it turns down to the left Kidney, and then passing in form of an *S*, it ends at the upper part of the *Os Sacrum* into the *Rectum*.

At the beginning of this Gut there is a Valve formed by the Production the inmost Coat of the Intestines in this place; it hinders the Excrements which

are

are once fallen into the *Colon* to return again into the *Ileum*. It has a strong Ligament, which running along its upper side from the *Ileum* to the *Rectum*, strengthens it against the weight of the Excrements, and draws it together into Cells, which, with the *Valvulae Conniventes*, retard the Passage of the Excrements, that we may not be obliged continually to go to Stool. The fleshy Fibres of its second Coat are greater and stronger than those of the other Intestines, because a greater strength was requisite to cause the Excrements to ascend. The chief design of the *Colon's* surrounding the *Abdomen*, and, with the *Rectum*, touching all the Parts contain'd in it, seems to be, that by immediate fomentation with Clysters we might ease them of their Maladies.

The *Rectum* is the last of the Intestines: of the *Rectum*. It is a hand's breadth and a half long: its Cavity is about three fingers in diameter; Coats are thicker than those of the *Colon*. It begins at the upper part of the *Os Sacrum*, where the *Colon* ends, and going straight down, it is tied to the extremity of the *Coccyx* by the *Peritoneum* behind, and to the Neck of the Bladder in Men, and in Women to the Neck of the Womb before, from thence comes the Sympathy between these Parts. There is very much Fat about its external side, therefore it is call'd the Fat Gut. Its Extremity

*Of the Muscles  
of the Rectum.*

tremity forms the *Anus*, into which there are three Muscles inserted. The first is the *Sphincter Ani*, this is a fleshy Muscle about four fingers broad, compos'd of Circular Fibres, which embrace the Extremity of the *Rectum* for three fingers height, and which hangs over it another finger's breadth; so that in the Operation for a *Fistula in Ano*, there is always an Inch more of this Muscle cut than there is of the *Rectum*. It is connected forwards to the *Acceleratores Urinae* in Men, and to the Neck of the Womb in Women, and backwards to the *Os Coccygis*. Its Use is to shut the Passage of the *Anus*, which the weight of the *Faces* open.

The other two Muscles are the *Levatores Ani*; they arise from the Internal and Lateral side of the *Os Ischium*, and are inserted into the *Sphincter Ani*. They draw the *Anus* upwards. A Palsy of the *Sphincter* causes an involuntary running of the Excrements, and a Palsy of the *Levatores* causes a descent of the *Anus*.

*Of the Vessels  
of the Guts.*

Now all these Guts lying in a little space, are kept from entangling one another by the *Mesentery*, which is a Fat Membrane, placed in the middle of the *Abdomen*, almost of a Circular figure, with a narrow Production, to which the end of the *Colon* and beginning of the *Rectum* are tied. It is about four fingers breadth and

and an half in diameter ; its circumference being full of Plaits and Foldings, is about three Ells in length. The *Intestines*, which are tied to this Circumference, are about eight or nine Ells long ; so that to every Inch of the Circumference of the Mesentery there are three Inches of the Intestines fastened. The Mesentery it self is strongly tied to the first three *Vertebrae* of the Loins. It's composed of three *Laminae* ; the inner, upon which the Glands and Fat lie, and the Veins and Arteries run, is its own proper Membrane ; and the other two, which cover each side of the proper Membrane, come from the *Peritoneum*.

Between the two External *Laminae* of the Mesentery run the Branches of the *Arteria Mesenterica Superior* and *Inferior*, which bring the Blood to the Intestines and the *Vena Mesenterica*, which being Branches of the *Porta*, carry the Blood back from the Guts to the Liver. Here all the large Branches of both Arteries and Veins communicating with one another, march directly to the Guts, where, with the Nerves from the *Plexus Mesentericus*, they divide into an infinite number of smaller Branches, which spread themselves exceeding finely upon the Coats of the Intestines.

The

## Of the Lacteal Veins, &c.

The *Vene Lactea* and Lymphatick Vessels run likewise upon the Mesentery, in which there are also several Vesicular Glands, the biggest of which, in the middle of the Mesentery, is call'd *Pancreas Assellij*. These Glands receive the *Lympa* and *Chyle* from the Lacteal Veins, of which next in order.

### S E C T. VIII.

#### Of the Lacteal Veins, Receptacle of the Chyle, and Thoracick-Duct.

Whilst the grosser Parts of the Aliments are by the Peristaltick Motion of the Guts, by the pressure of the Midriff, and Muscles of the Lower Belly, thrust out at the *Anus*; the finer Parts, or Chyle, are by the same powers squeez'd into the narrow Orifices of the Lacteal Veins.

These are long and slender Pipes, whose Coats are so thin as to become invisible when they are not distended with Chyle or *Lympa*. They arise from all the Parts of the Small Guts by fine Capillary Tubes, which as they run from the sides of the Guts to the Glands in the Mesentery, unite and form larger Branches; these are called *Vene Lactea Primi Generis*. The Mouths of these Lacteals, which are open

open into the Cavity of the Guts, from whence they receive their Chyle, are so small, as not to be seen by the best Microscope. It was necessary they should be smaller than the finest Arteries in the Body, that nothing might enter which might stop the Circulation of the Blood. The same Extremity of the Lacteals has likewise communication with the Capillary Arteries of the Guts, by which they receive a *Lympha* which dilutes and propels the Chyle forwards, and washes the Lacteals and Glands, that they may not furr, and be obstructed by the Chyle's staying in them upon fasting. The other Extremity of the Lacteals discharges the Chyle into the Vesicular Cells of the Glands dispersed up and down the Mesentery: And from these arise other Lacteals of a larger size, which carry the Chyle immediately into the *Receptaculum Chyli*; they are call'd *Lactea Secundi Generis*. The Lacteal Veins have Valves at several distances, which hinder the Chyle from returning back into the Intestines.

*Affellius*, who first discover'd the Lacteal Vessels, in the Year 1622, and his Followers, thought that they carry'd the Chyle to the Liver; till *Pequet*, in the Year 1651, found out the *Receptaculum Chyli*, and *Ductus Thoracicus*; though they were both elegantly describ'd by

Itaque in illis  
animantibus  
(scil. Equis)  
ab hoc ipso  
in signi trunco  
sinistro Juguli, qua posterior sedes radicis Vena interna Jugularis spectat,  
magna quedam propago germinat, qua praterquam quod in ejus origine  
Ostium semicirculare habet, est etiam alba & aquae humoris plena; nec  
longe ab ortu in duas partes scinditur, paulo post rursus coeuntes in unam,  
qua nullos ramos diffundens, juxta sinistrum Vertebrarum latus, penetrato  
septo transverso, deorsum ad medium usque lumborum fertur; quo loco  
lato effecta, magnamque Arteriam circumplexa, obscurissimum finem,  
mihique non bene perceptum obtinet. Barth. Euft. Antigrammate xiii.  
de Vena sine Pari.

The Receptacle of the Chyle is easily found in live Bodies, but with a greater difficulty in those that are dead. It lies about the descending Trunk of the Great Artery, between the *Celiack* and *Emulgent* Arteries, surrounded by several Lymphatic Glands, call'd *Glandule Lumbares*, which discharge their *Lympha* into it. The Receptacle seems to be only a large Bag form'd by the union of the second order of Lacteals, and many Lympheducts which open into it. It contains about an Ounce of Water. It is sometimes in Brutes, as well as in Men, divided into two or three Parts, which unite into one Duct about the bigness of a Goose-Quill. This Duct ascends into the *Thorax* behind the Great Artery; and about the Heart it frequently divides into two or three Branches, which immediately unite again into one, and creeping along

along the Gullet, it marches to the left Subclavian Vein, where it opens at one or two Orifices, which are cover'd with a semi-lunar Valve, that the Blood may pass over them, and the Chyle run from underneath it and mix with the Blood in the Veins. The *Ductus Thoracicus* has Valves at several distances, which hinder the Chyle that has once past them, from falling back. It goes always up the left Side, that the Pulsation of the Artery, which lies immediately upon it, may press the Chyle upwards. The Thoracick Duct receives the Lympheducts from the several Parts in the Chest, as it passes along to the Subclavian Vein.

## S E C T. IX.

*Of the Lymphatick Vessels.*

Having frequent occasion to mention the Lymphatick Vessels which have no particular Source or Origination, but which almost all send their *Lympa* to the Receptacle of the Chyle and Thoracick Duct, just now described; I shall therefore give a general Description of them in this Place.

The Lympheducts are slender pellucid Tubes, whose Cavities are contracted at small and unequal distances, by two opposite semi-lunar Valves, which permit

D

a thin

## Of the Lymphatick Vessels.

a thin and transparent Liquor to pass through them towards the Heart, but which shut, like Flood-gates, upon its returning. They are in all Parts of the Body: But after what manner, I think, needs no great Dispute; for without doubt, all the Liquors in the Body (excepting the Chyle) are separated from the Blood in the fine Capillary Vessels by a different Pipe from the common Chanel in which the rest of the Blood moves: But whether this Pipe be longer or no longer than the thickness of the Coat of the Blood-Vessel, whether it be visible or invisible, it is still a Gland, whilst it suffers some parts of the Blood to pass through it, denying a passage to others. Now the Glands which separate the *Lympha* are of the smallest kind, being invisible to the finest Microscopes; but their Excretory Ducts, the Lymphatick Vessels, unite with one another, and grow larger as they approach the Heart; yet they do not open into one Common Chanel, as the Veins do, for sometimes we find two or three or more Lymph-ducts running by one another, which only communicate by short intermediate Ducts, or which unite and immediately divide again. In their progress they always touch at one or two Conglobate or Vesicular Glands, into which they discharge themselves of their *Lympha*.

Some-

Sometimes the whole Lympheduct opens at several places into the Gland, and sometimes it sends in only two or three Branches, whilst the main Trunk passes over and joins the Lympheducts which arise from the opposite side of the Glands, exporting again the *Lympa* to their common Receptacles. Now the Glands of the *Abdomen* which receive the Lympheducts from all the Parts which it contains, as likewise from the Lower Extremities, are the *Glandula Inguinata*, *Sacra*, *Iliaca*, *Lumbares*, *Mesenterica* and *Hepatica*; all which send out new Lympheducts, which pour their *Lympa* into the *Receptaculum Chyli*, as those of the Chest, Head, and Arms do into the *Ductus Thoracicus*, *Jugular* and *Subclavian* Veins. The chief reason for the Lymphaticks emptying themselves into the Conglobate Glands, seems to be, that the slow moving *Lympa* may receive a new Velocity from the Elastick compression of the fibrous Cells of the Glands, whose fabrick resembles that of the Spleen; and therefore they are improperly call'd Glands, being they separate no Liquor from the Blood. It's true, their Exporting Lympheducts communicating with their Arteries, must receive a *Lympa* from them; but this is done without the help of the Conglobate Glands, as at the first

*Of the Lymphatick Vessels.*

rise of the Lympheducts from all the Parts of the Body.

If you examine the *Lympha Chymically*, you will find that it contains a great deal of Volatile, but no Fix'd Salt, some Phlegm, some Sulphure, and a little Earth.

When we consider the Places into which the Lymphaticks discharge themselves, we cannot but think that one of the principal Uses of the *Lympha* is to dilute the thick Chyle, that it may the more easily mix with the mass of Blood. But if this were the only Intention of Nature, in the Separation of the *Lympha*, it would be hard to give any good Reason why it should be separated at such distances from the Parts into which it is emptied, and almost every where, where there are Capillary Blood-Vessels. And therefore I am apt to think, that there was a Necessity that the *Lympha* should not be mix'd with the refluent Blood in the Veins; because the cohesion of the different particles of the Blood being broke in the Lungs, and by their continual collision against the sides of the Arteries, when the Blood comes to move slowly from a narrow chanel into a wider, each Particle easily moving in the thin and fluid *Lympha*, would unite with more of its own kind, and form several

*Moleculæ*

Molecule each of one sort of Particles; which unequal mixture of the Blood would be the ruine of the whole Machine.

S E C T. X.

Of the Glands in General.

THE Modern Anatomists have reduced all the Glands of the Body to two sorts, viz. the *Glandula Conglobata*, and the *Glandula Conglomerata*.

A Conglobate Gland is a little, smooth body, wrapt up in a fine Skin, by which it is separated from all other Parts, only admitting an Artery and Nerve to pass in, and giving way to a Vein and Excretory Canal to come out. Of this sort are the Glands of the Brain, the Labial Glands, and the *Testes*.

A Conglomerate Gland is compos'd of many little Conglobate Glands, all tied together, and wrapt up in one common Tunicle or Membrane. Sometimes all their Excretory Ducts unite and make one common Pipe, through which the Liquor of all of them runs, as the *Pancreas* and the *Parotides* do. Sometimes the Ducts uniting, form several Pipes, which only communicate with one another by crois-Canals, and such are the *Mammae*. Others, again, have several Pipes, without any communication with

*Of the Glands in General.*

one another, of which sort are the *Glandula Lachrymalis*, and *Prostata*. And a fourth sort is, when each little Gland has its own Excretory Duct, through which it transmits its Liquor to a common Basin, as the Kidneys.

Thus much of the Fabrick of the Glands we know from Dissections : Their Inward Structure, and the Manner by which they separate the several Humours from the Blood, good Glasses and sound Reasoning must discover. The Ancients thought that the Glands were Cisterns which contained certain Liquors, by which the Blood being fermented, throw off the Humours we find in the Excretory Ducts. But as these Ferments must mix with the Blood, so they must be exhausted and carried off by the Blood into Veins. And because all the Liquors in the Body are separated from the Blood, there must therefore be another Ferment to separate more: but this second Ferment is liable to the same fate as the first; and therefore there must be an infinite Series of Ferments in the Body, which is absurd. If it should be said, that the Ferments are not carry'd off with the Blood, they must be stopt by the Structure of the Glands: but then we have a Secretion without a Ferment, which is the Opinion of most of the Moderns. Some of which think that the Glands are

Tubes, whose Orifices differing in figure, admit only bodies of similar figures to pass through them. But this Opinion is demonstrably false; for besides that Liquors are susceptible of all figures, and that bodies of any figure and a lesser diameter than that of the Gland will pass through, and that even a body of a similar figure and equal diameter with that of the Orifice of the Gland, may be presented innumerable ways, and not be able to pass through, whilst there is only one way it can pass; I say, besides all these, it is easie to demonstrate, that all the Vessels in the Body are either Conical or Cylindrical, and consequently no difference in the figure of their Orifices: for the pressure of a Fluid being always perpendicular upon the sides of the Vessel that contains it, and equal at equal distances from the sides; the sides must be every where equally distract'd; that is to say, a Section perpendicular to the *Axis* of the Vessel must be a Circle, and consequently the Vessel be either Cylindrical or Conical. This is agreeable to the Observations and Speculations of the nicest Anatomists, who tell us, that a <sup>neck and</sup> Gland is nothing but a Convolution of small Arteries, whose last Branches are Cylindrical, or, which is the same thing, part of an infinitely long Cone. Now there being no Ferment lodg'd in any part

part of the Body, and the Structure of all Glands being the same, Secretion must be perform'd by the Velocity of the Blood, and the Magnitude of the Excretory Orifice; for we can conceive nothing else that can conduce to it. The different Velocities of the Blood at the several Glands, produce different cohæsions in the Particles of the Blood, and the magnitude of the Orifices are agreeable to the several Cohæsions; for through a large Orifice Particles of the greatest cohæsion may pass, but a small will only admit of a Fluid whose Particles may be easily separated from one another. The narrow limits of my Design will not allow me to illustrate this Opinion any further: Another may be seen in Dr. Cockburn's *Oeconomia Animalis*, who is amongst the first who proposed to explain Secretion, from the different Velocities of the Blood.

## S E C T. XI.

## Of the Pancreas, and Succus Pancreaticus.

f the Pan-

**T**H E Pancreas, or Sweet-bread, is a Gland of the Conglomerate sort, situated betwixt the bottom of the Stomach and the *Vertebrae* of the Loins; it lies a-cross the *Abdomen*, reaching from the Liver to the Spleen, and is strongly tied

tied to the *Peritoneum*, from which it receives its common Membranes. It weighs commonly four or five Ounces. It is about six fingers breadth long, two broad, and one thick. Its Substance is a little soft and supple; every little Gland has a small excretory Vessel, which uniting all together, form one common Duct about the bigness of a Quill, clear and transparent, like to a Lymphatick Vessel. This Duct runs all along the middle of the *Pancreas*, and opens into the Cavity of the *Duodenum*, at its lower end, where there is a little Caruncle at its Orifice. Sometimes it joins the *Ductus Communis Cholodochus*, and then both open at one Orifice into the *Duodenum*. This Canal was first found by *Virisungus*, and is call'd *Ductus Pancreaticus Virisungi*.

The *Pancreas* receives Arteries from the *Cœliack*. Its Veins carry their Blood into the Splenick Branch of the *Porta*, and the Intercostal furnishes it with Nerves. The Use of the *Succus Pancreaticus* is to dilute the Chyle with the Liquor that is separated in the Glands of the Guts, that it may the more easily enter the mouths of the Lacteal Vessels.

## S E C T. XII.

### Of the Liver and Gall-Bladder.

*Its Situation.*

THE Liver lies in the right Hypochondriacum. Its Convex and upper side reaches a little beyond the *Cartilago Xiphoides*, and touches the *Diaphragma*: Its Concave and under side covers the *Pylorus*, and part of the *Stomach*, as also a part of the *Colon*, all the *Duodenum*, a part of the *Jejunum*, and of the *Omentum*. When we stand, its Extremity goes near to the Navel.

*Its Figure.*

The Liver is almost round, and pretty thick. Its upper side is Convex, smooth, and equal; the other side is Concave, but not so equal. In its middle and forepart it is divided into two, by a Fissure, where the Umbilical Vessels enter. The Gall-bladder is fastened to its under side, where there are three Eminences that the Ancients called *Porta*, of which one passes for a little Lobe. When it is full of Blood, it is of a dark red colour; when the Blood is washed out of it, 'tis pale and soft.

*Its Connexion.*

It is fastened in the Body by two Ligaments. The first, which is large and strong, comes from the *Peritoneum* that covers the *Diaphragma*, and penetrating the Substance of the Liver, it joins the

*Capsula*

*Capsula of the Porta.* The second is the Umbilical Vein ; it comes from the Navel, and enters by the great Fissure of the Liver to join the *Porta* : After the Birth, it degenerates into a Ligament, but is of little use for the fastening the Liver.

Tis cover'd with a common Membrane from the *Peritonaeum*, <sup>Its Mem-  
branes.</sup> besides that every Lobe and Gland has its proper Membrane.

The common Membrane of the Liver <sup>Its Substance</sup> being raised, its Substance appears, which is composed of several Lobes of Glands, of a Conick figure, not easily to be distinguished in the Liver of Men. These Lobes are disposed all along the sides of each branch of the Vessels in the Liver ; they are every one cover'd with a proper Membrane, and tied to one another by other Membranes, in such a manner, as that they leave also little Intervals betwixt them, which are more visible in Fish, and other imperfect Animals. Every Lobe receives small Vessels, which are continued to the little Glands of which each Lobe is composed.

The Vessels of the Liver, are, the *Vena Cava* <sup>Its Vessels.</sup> and the *Porta*. They are accompanied with many small branches of the Arteries, which come from the *Cæliaca* and *Mesenterica Superior*, which two bring the Blood for the nourishment of the

the Liver. The *Porta* brings the Blood full of Bile for Secretion, and the *Cava* carries back the Blood that remains from both.

The *Vena Porta* and the *Cava* enter the Liver by its Concave side, and are equally distributed through all its Substance : where-ever there is a Branch of the one, there is a Branch of the other ; so that each Lobe, and each Gland in the Lobe, whether on the Convex or Concave side, receive the same Vessels. The *Vena Porta* discharges, by the Extremity of its Branches, the Blood, as yet full of Bile, into the little Glands which form the Lobes, of which the *Parenchyma* of the Liver is composed, where being separated from the Bile, which is taken up by the Biliary Vessels, (which accompany the Branches of the *Porta*, and carried to the Gall-Bladder or *Duodenum*) it is carried back by the Branches of the *Cava*.

It receives its Nerves from the *Plexus Hepaticus* of the Intercostal Nerve.

Besides these Vessels, the Liver has Lymphatick Vessels, most of which open into the Conglobated Glands, near the *Porta*, on the Concave side of the Liver ; from thence the *Lympha* is carried by other Lymphaticks to the *Receptaculum Chylis*.

*The Excretory Vessels of the Liver.*

We come now to the Excretory Vessels of the Liver, which are, the *Vesicula Fellea*, and

and *Porus Bilarius*. The *Vesicula Fellea* of the Gall-Bladder, is fixed to the Concave side of the Liver. Its Figure is like that of a Pear ; 'tis of a different bigness almost in every Subject ; the biggest is about the bigness of a little Hen-egg : When the Liver is in its natural situation, the bottom or largest part of the Bladder is downwards, and the Neck or narrowest part upwards ; and then it touches the Stomach as well as the *Colon*, where it frequently dyes them yellow. This Bladder is composed of three Coats, the outermost is common to it with the Liver ; the next, which is proper to it, is thick and solid, compos'd of transverse, oblique and straight Fibres. The third is thin and nervous. This last Coat is cover'd within by a kind of Crust or Mucous, which preserves it against the Acrimony of the Bile. *Malpighius* has remark'd some little Glands between its Coats, where the Cystick Arteries end, which gave him ground to think that it was the same in the *Porus Bilarius*. The Bile is brought into the Gall-Bladder by some small Vessels which arise from the neighbouring Glands, and uniting, form one or two Pipes which open at the Neck of the Bladder. These Ducts I could never discover in any Liver but an Oxe's, though I have reason to think that they are likewise in a Humane.

From

From the Neck of the Gall-Bladder there goes a Pipe, not in a straight Line with the Bladder, but, as it were, more *of the Ductus Cysticus* depreis'd in the Liver. It is call'd *Ductus Cysticus*. Some small Biliary Ducts open likewise into it, and its inner Membrane has several *Ruge*, which retard the motion of the Bile. To this Pipe, which is about the bigness of a Goose-Quill, is join'd another, call'd *Ductus Hepaticus*, or *Porus Biliaris*. These two together make the *Ductus Communis Cholodochus*, which goes obliquely to the lower end of the *Duodenum*, or beginning of the *Jejunum*. After it has pierced the first Coat, it runs near two fingers breadth between the Coats, before it opens in the Cavity of the Intestine; which oblique Insertion serves instead of a Valve to hinder the Bile to return into the *Ductus Communis*, having once entred the Intestine.

The Gall-Bladder has two Veins from the *Porta*, which are call'd *Cystica Gemella*. It has some small Arteries from the *Celiaca Dextra*, and some Lymphaticks.

*Of the Porus Biliaris* is another Excretory Vessel of the Liver. It has as many Branches as the *Vena Porta*, which it accompanies through every Lobe and Gland in the Liver. Where-ever there is a Branch of the one, there is a Branch of the other; and these two are enclosed in one

one common Capsule, as in a Sheath : The Use of this Capsule is to facilitate the Motion of the Blood and Bile, by the contraction of its Fibres. All these Branches unite, and make one Trunk of the bigness of a small Quill, which joins (as we have said) at the end of the *Ductus Cysticus*, for the carrying the Bile from the Liver to the Intestines, by the *Ductus Communis Cholodochus*.

The Insertion of the *Porus Bilarius* into the *Ductus Cysticus*, is oblique, with its Mouth looking towards the *Ductus Communis* ; by which means it is impossible that the Bile which comes from the *Cystus* can enter the *Porus*.

The Bile which is found in the Gall-Bladder, is thinner, and different from that which is in the *Porus Bilarius*. This *Malpighius* proves by an Experiment, which is, that having tied the *Ductus Cysticus*, he remarked, that the Bile which came by the *Porus Bilarius*, was of a different taste, smell, colour, and consistency, from that in the Gall-Bladder.

The Use of the Bile is to sheath or blunt the Acids of the Chyle ; because *The Use of the Bile.* they being entangled with its Sulphurs, thicken it so as that it cannot be sufficiently diluted by the *Succus Pancreaticus* to enter the Lacteal Vessels. This appears not only from the Analysis of the Bile, which

which yields more of a Lixivious than of a Volatile Alcaline Salt: but likewise from what *Leeuwenhoeck* has observed, that of the great quantity of acid Salts he has seen amongst the Aliments in the Stomach, he never could find any in the Chyle after it had passed the *Duodenum*.

Because some Chyle is almost always passing through the *Duodenum*, therefore it was necessary that the Bile likewise should be continually poured into it from the *Ductus Hepaticus*. In a Dog, whose *Ductus Communis Cholodochus* was near as big as a Man's, I have gather'd it at the rate of two drachms in one hour. But because a greater quantity of Aliments requires a greater quantity of Bile; therefore, according as the Stomach is more or less distended with Food, it presses out of the Gall-Bladder a proportionable quantity of Gall to be mix'd with the Chyle in the Guts.

## S E C T. XIII.

## Of the Spleen.

*Of the Situation, Connexion and Shape of the Spleen.*

**T**H E Spleen is situated in the left *Hypochondrium*, under the *Diaphragma*, between the Ribs and the Stomach, above the left Kidney: It is tied to the *Peritonaeum*, to the Midriff, and to the *Omentum*. It is of a bluish or leaden colour,

colour, of an oblong figure, thick at the edges, not thin, as the Liver. It has two Membranes. The External comes from the *Peritoneum*.

The Internal Membrane is finer and thinner than the External: for if you blow into the *Splenic Artery*, the Air shall pass through the one, but not the other. Its Fibres are not irregularly woven, as those of other Membranes seem to be; but they come from innumerable Points, as Rays from so many Centres; and the Fibres of one Point are regularly woven with the Fibres of the Points surrounding it. It receives Veins, Nerves and Arteries from those that enter the Spleen.

The Substance of the Spleen is not only kept together by its two Membranes, but also by innumerable Fibres which come from the Points of the Internal Membrane, and are inserted in the Points of the opposite side of the same Membrane, the Expansion of the Extremity of these Fibres seem to compose the Internal Membrane.

The Spleen is composed of an Infinity of Membranes, which form little Cells and Cavities of different figures and bigness, which communicate with one another, and which are always full of Blood.

At the Extremities of the Blood-Vessels in the Spleens of Sheep, we find several small

small white and soft Specks, which *Malpighius* calls Glands.

*Arteries.*

The Spleen has Arteries from the *Cæsarean* Vessel, whose Capillary Branches make frequent Inosculations upon the Membranes of the Cells. Its Veins, whose Extremities communicate with the Cavities of the Cells, as they come out of the Spleen, unite and make the *Ramus Splenicus* of the *Porta*, which carries the Blood from the Spleen to the Liver. These, with its Nerves, which are considerable from the *Plexus Splenicus*, are equally distributed through the whole Substance of the Spleen, being all included in a common *Capsula*. There are likewise a few Lymphatick Vessels which arise from the Spleen, and discharge themselves into the Lumbary Glands.

*The Use of the Spleen.*

The true Use of the Spleen is yet unknown. The Ancients thought that it was the receptacle of the Melancholick Humour, some considering that in the Spleen there are a great number of Membranes and Fibres, and also many Nerves, think that the Blood is attenuated, and becomes more spirituous in the Spleen; and considering that the most of the Blood in the Liver comes immediately from the Spleen and *Omentum*, they think that the one furnishes the Oleaginous, the other the Spirituous part of the Bile.

S E C T.

## S E C T. XIV.

Of the Kidneys, Glandulæ Renales,  
Ureters and Bladder.

THE Kidneys are Two in Number, Of the Number and Figure of the Kidneys. one on each side ; they have the same Figure as Kidney-beans : Their length is four or five fingers breadth ; their breadth is three, and their thickness two : The right is under the Liver, and the left under the Spleen. In a *Fœtus* their External Substance is divided into several Lobes join'd together, which in Adults becomes more close ; therefore their Superficies is equal and smooth : They have two Membranes, the one common from the *Peritoneum*, the other proper ; they are ordinarily cover'd with much Fat ; their Colour is a dark Red.

We observe in the Kidneys, Lymphatic Vessels, which discharge themselves Of their Vessels. into *Pequet's Reservoiry*, Nerves which come from the Intercostals, Veins which go to the *Cava* ; their Arteries come from the *Aorta*.

These Veins and Arteries are call'd *Emulgents* ; they pierce the Reins in their Concave sides, (which lie nearest the *Cava* and *Aorta*) included in one Capsule, and are divided into several Branches, which surround the *Pelvis*. These Branches are again divided into an infinity

infinity of other leis, which go to the external part of the Reins, where they inosculate, and form a sort of Net, from which their Extremities coming, terminate in an infinity of little Glands.

*Their Substance.*

These Glands are of a round figure; they compose the outer Substance of the Reins, which is half a finger thick. From each of them there goes a long a small Tube, these Tubes compose the inner Substance of the Reins. As they approach the *Pelvis* or Bason, they gather together in little bundles, whose Extremities piercing the Membrane of the *Pelvis*, form those little Protuberances on the inside of the *Pelvis*, call'd *Papilla*. The

*Of the Pelvis.* *Pelvis* or Bason is a Cavity in the middle of the Kidneys, formed by a Dilatation of the Ureters. It sends out several Ramifications, which divide the Urinary Tubes into Bundles, and which make a sort of *Capsula* to the Blood-Vessels.

*The Use of the Kidneys.* The Use of the Reins is to separate the Urine from the Blood, which, by the motion of the Heart and Arteries is thrust into the Emulgent Branches, which carry it to the little Glands; in which the Serosity, being separated, is received by the Orifice of the little Tubes which go from the Glands to the *Pelvis*; from thence it runs by the Ureters into the Bladder. The Blood which was carry'd into the Glands, and which could not

enter

enter their Excretory Tubes, is brought back by the Emulgent Veins.

In the middle between the *Aorta* and <sup>of the Glandulae Renales.</sup> the Kidneys, a little above the Emulgent Vessels, are situated the *Glandulae Renales* or *Capsula Atrabilares*. They are two in number, one on each side, wrapt up in some Fat: They sometimes change their situation, and their figure is also various; for in some they are round, in others square, triangular, or of an irregular figure; the right is ordinarily bigger than the left, and each about the bigness of a *Nux Vomica*: In a *Fœtus* they are always almost as big as the Kidneys. They are cover'd with a fine Membrane, and within they have several small *Sinus*'s which contain a blackish sort of Liquor. Their Blood-Vessels are Branches sometimes of the *Vena Cava* and *Aorta*, and sometimes of the Emulgent.

The Intercostal Nerve furnishes a <sup>Their Vessels and Use.</sup> branch, which makes a *Plexus* upon them. Their Use is not yet known. Some think they separate a Liquor from the Arterial Blood, for the liquefying the Blood which is too thick after it comes from the Kidneys.

The Utrerers are two long and small <sup>Of the Uter.</sup> Canals which come from the Basins of the Kidneys, one on each side: They lie betwixt the doubling of the *Peritoneum*; and descending in the form of an *S*, they pierce

pierce the Bladder near its Neck, where they run first some space betwixt its Coats, and then they open in its Cavity.

*Their Coats.*

They are composed of three Coats: The first is from the *Peritoneum*: The second is made of small oblique muscular Fibres: And the third, which is very sensible, has several small Glands which separate a slimy Liquor, to defend it against the acrimony of the Urine. The neighbouring Parts furnish them with Blood-Vessels, and their Nerves come from the Intercostals, and from the *Vertebra* of the Loins. Their Cavity is sometimes contracted in three or four places, especially towards the Bladder. Such as are subject to the Gravel, and given to excessive Drinking, have them sometimes so much dilated, that you may put the end of your Little-Finger into them. Their Use is to carry the Urine from the Reins to the Bladder. Their Obstruction causes a suppression of the Urine.

*Of the Bladder.*

The Bladder is situated between the Duplicature of the *Peritoneum*, in the lower part of the *Abdomen*, between the *Os Sacrum* and the *Os Pubis*, above the straight Gut in Men, and the Neck of the Womb in Women. It's tied to the Navel by the *Utrachus* degenerated into a Ligament, and its sides to the Umbilical Arteries;

Arteries ; its Neck to the *Intestinum Rectum* in Men, and to the Neck of the *Matrix* in Women. It is not of the shape of a Pear, as is commonly said ; for it is rather bigger near its Neck, than at the bottom. It is composed of three Coats : The first is a Covering of the *Peritonium*. The second is compos'd of muscular Fibres, which run irregularly several ways. And the third, which is full of Wrinkles for facilitating its Dilatation, is both Glandulous and Nervous. Its Glands separate a viscous and slimy Matter, which defends it from the acrimony of the Salts in the Urine. Around its Neck (which is longer in Men than in Women) there goes a small Muscle call'd *Sphincter Vesicae*. It contracts the Orifice of the Bladder, that the Urine may not run out, but when it thrusts open the passage, by the contraction of the second Coat of the Bladder, which is therefore call'd *Detrusor Urinae*. The Blood-Vessels of the Bladder are branches of the Hypogastricks. Its Nerves come from the Intercostals. Its Use is, to be a Reservoir of the Urine, that it may not incessantly run from us, as it is separated in the Kidneys.

We find in the Urine much Phlegm and Volatile Salt, a little Sulphur, Earth, and fixt Salt.

S E C T.

## S E C T. XV.

## Of the Parts of Generation proper to Men.

THE Parts of Generation proper to Men, may be fitly divided into those which prepare and separate the Seed from the Blood, and those which convey it into the Womb. The first is done by three sorts of Glands, which are the *Testes*, the *Vesicula Seminales*, and the *Prostate*. The second is the office of the *Penis* or *Yard*.

The *Testes*, which prepare the principal part of the Seed, receive their Blood from two long and slender Arteries which arise from the two sides of the great Artery, a little below the *Emulgents*; and running between the Duplicature of the *Peritonem*, to which they give some small twigs, they pass out of the *Abdomen* at the holes in the *Transverse* and *Oblique* Muscles, and march over the *Os Pubis*, within the Productions of the *Peritonem*, to the *Testicles*; but before they arrive, they divide each into two branches, the largest of which are spent upon the *Testicles* themselves, and the two small ones upon the *Epididymides*. When the Blood has discharg'd it self of the Seed into the *Testicles*, it returns by the Veins, which rising in several branches

from

from the *Testes*, tend towards the *Abdomen*, in the Productions of the *Peritoneum*, the same way the Arteries came down. In their progress, their branches frequently inosculate, and divide again, till they come near the *Abdomen*, then they all unite in one Trunk; and therefore, because of their shape, are called *Corpora Pyramidalia*. In the *Abdomen* they receive some small twigs from the *Peritoneum*. The Right Spermatick Vein opens into the *Vena Cava*, a little below the Emulgent: but the Left is always inserted into the Emulgent of the same side, that it may not be obliged to cross the *Aorta*, whose Pulse would be apt to stop the Blood which returns from the Testicles very slowly, by reason of the narrow Orifices of the Spermatick Arteries, and the largeness of the Veins. These Blood-Vessels have been called the *Vasa Preparantia*.

*The Vasa Preparantia.*

Having describ'd the Blood-Vessels of the Testicles; I come now to their Integuments, which are Three, one Common, and two Proper. The Common is the *Scrotum*, which is composed of two Membranes, besides the Scarf-skin: The first is the Skin, which is thin, and without Fat in this place, but full of Veins and Arteries. The second is call'd *Dartos*; it's a thin Membrane, made up of fleshy or muscular Fibres, by means of

## Of the Parts of Generation

which the *Scrotum* is wrinkled and contracted. The *Scrotum* is divided in the middle by a thin Membrane, which separates the two Testicles. When the *Scrotum* is little, and contracted, it is a sign of Health ; its Use is to contain both the Testicles.

*Of the Tunica Vaginalis.*

The First of the Proper Integuments is call'd *Tunica Vaginalis*, or Ἔνθετήσις, being formed by the Dilatation of the Productions of the External Membrane of the *Peritonaeum* ; its Internal Superficies is smooth, its External rough : it contains the *Vasa Preparantia* and *Deferrantia* ; it embraces loosely the whole body of the Testicle, adhering to one end of the *Epididymis*. Upon the outside of this Tunicle runs a Muscle call'd *Cremaster*, from its office ; it rises from the *Os Pubis*, and spreading its Fibres upon the *Elythroides*, it suspends the Testicles, and draws them up in the act of Generation.

*Of the Albuginea.*

The Second is that which covers immediately the Testicles. It is call'd *Albuginea*, because of its White colour. It is strong and thick, very smooth and equal. The branches of the *Vasa Preparantia* are finely wav'd upon it.

*Of the Substance of the Testicles.*

The Substance of the Testicles, which formerly was thought to be a sort of Marrow, is nothing but the folding of several small and soft Tubes, disposed in such

such a manner, that if they could be separate from one another, without breaking them, they might be drawn out to a great length. They run in short waves from the *Tunica Albuginea* to the *Axis* of the Testicles, being divided from one another by thin membranous Productions from the inner side of the *Albuginea*. These Productions unite at the *Axis* of the Testicle ; and, form a Cover to some small Tubes which at one end of the Testicle pierce the *Tunica Albuginea*, and unite into one Canal, which by several turnings and windings upon the upper part of the Testicles, forms this body which we call *Epididymis*. They are *of the Epididymis*. cover'd with a thin Production of the *Albuginea*. The same Canal continuing and ascending from the Extremities of the *Epididymedes*, forms the *Vasa Differencia*, *Of the Vasa Differencia*, one from each *Epididymis*, about the bigness of a Goose-Quill : as they ascend within the *Tunica Vaginalis*, they make several short turnings and windings ; then they enter by the holes of the transverse and oblique Muscles into the *Abdomen*, and marching over the *Ureters*, between the backside of the *Bladder* and the *Rectum*, they grow larger as they approach the *Vesicule Seminales*, (which open into them) where they come close to one another, and growing again smaller and smaller, they pass through the E 2 Prostate,

*Of the Parts of Generation*

*Prostatae*, and open into the *Urethra*, a little below the Neck of the Bladder, where each Orifice has a spongius border, call'd *Caput-Gallinaginis*, which hinders the involuntary running of the Seed. The Cavity of the *Vasa Diferentia*, before they enter the *Abdomen*, will hardly admit of a Hog's-Bristle; as they encrease, so likewise do their Cavities, which are tortuous, and obliquely contracted by their Inner Coat, which is nervous, whiter and thinner than the External, which is compos'd of Muscular Fibres. The Testicles have several Lympheduets, which discharge themselves into the Inguinal Glands. Their Nerves come from the Intercostal, and 21th of the Spine.

The Spermatick Arteries carry the Blood from the *Aorta* to the Testicles, which separate that part of it which is fit for Seed. The Veins carry back to the *Cava* what Blood remains, after the Secretion of the Seed, and the Nourishment of the Parts. The Seed is further purified in the *Epididymedes*, and in coition is carry'd by the *Vasa Diferentia* into the *Urethra*. The reason of the length and Serpentine progress of the Spermatick Vessels, and their Excretory Ducts, is, that the *impetus* of the Seed at the *Caput Gallinaginis* might not be sufficient to dilate the Orifices of the

*Vasa*

*Vasa D*eferentia, but when assisted with the compression of the surrounding Parts.

The *Vesicula Seminales* are two in number, one on each side, situated betwixt the Bladder and the straight Gut, tied to the one and the other by a Membrane of fleshy Fibres, which, in time of Coition, contracts and presses the *Vesicula*: They are cover'd with a pretty thin Membrane, upon which do creep many branches of Veins, Arteries, Nerves, and Lymphaticks. Their External Surface resembles rather that of the Brains than that of the Guts of a little Bird; they are about two fingers breadth long, their broadest part is not an Inch, from which they grow narrower by little and little to their end which is next the *Prostata*. They have two considerable Cavities divided into membranous Cells, which open distinctly by two Orifices which are in their small Extremities, into the two *Vasa D*eferentia, from which they receive the Seed which is separated in the Testicles to be kept till Coition.

The *Prostata*, or *Corpus Glandulosum*, of the *Prostata* is a Conglomerate Gland situated at the Neck of the Bladder, covered with a Membrane made of muscular Fibres, as that of the *Vesicula*, and for the same Use. It is about the bigness of a Wall-nut. The *Vasa D*eferentia pass through

its Substance, which is Vesicular and Glandulous. The Glands separate a clear and mucilaginous Humour, which lies in the Vesicles till Coition, that it is carried into the beginning of the *Urethra* by eight or nine Excretory Ducts, which open about the Orifices of the *Vasa Diferentia*: The border of their Mouth is also spongy, to hinder a continual running of this Humour, which happens in a *Gonorrhœa*, when their Orifices are corroded by the Morbifick Matter which is thrust, by the Elasticity of the Air, into the empty Ducts, upon Coition.

Of the Yard. The other principal Member of the Parts of Generation, is the *Penis* or Yard, whose Shape and Dimensions are pretty well known. Its Skin, which is thin, and without Fat, has a reduplication, which makes a Hood to the *Glans* or End of the Yard, call'd *Preputium* or the Fore-skin. The small Ligament by which it is tied to the under side of the *Glans*, is call'd *Frænum*. The Use of the *Preputium* is to keep the *Glans* soft and moist, that it may have an Exquisite Sense.

The Substance of the Yard is composed of two Spongy Bodies, call'd *Corpora Cavernosa*; they arise at two different places, from the lower part of the *Os Pubis*. A little from their root they come close together, being only divided by

by a Membrane, which at its beginning is pretty thick, but as it approaches the End of the Yard, it grows thinner and thinner, where the *Corpora Cavernosa* terminate in the *Glans*.

The External Substance of these Spongy Bodies is hard, thick and white. The Internal is compos'd of small Fibres and Membranes which form a sort of loose Net-work, upon which the branches of the Blood-Vessels are curiously spread. When the Blood is stopt in the great Veins of the *Penis*, it runs through several small holes in the sides of their Capillary Branches into the Cavities of the Net-work, by which means the *Corpora Cavernosa* become distended, or the *Penis* erected.

Along the under side of the *Corpora Cavernosa* there runs a Pipe, which reaches from the Neck of the Bladder to the End of the Yard, call'd the *Urethra*. The fabrick of this Pipe resembles that of the *Corpora Cavernosa*, every where but a little at its end, where it joins the *Prostata*, which is only a thin Membrane: but the middle Substance of all the rest is spongiose: The outer is a close and white Membrane, and the Cavity of the Canal is lined by a soft Membrane of an Exquisite Sense. The spongiose part of the *Urethra* at both ends is much larger than in the middle: That end next the

*Prostata*, because of its bigness, is call'd the Bulb of the *Urethra*; and the other end forms the *Glans* or *Balanus*. The Veins in the *Urethra* have holes in their sides, through which the Blood passes into the Cavities of its Net-work, in an Erection, as in the *Corpora Cavernosa*.

On each of the Bulb of the *Urethra* there lies a small Gland, whose Excretory Duct sloping forwards, pours into the *Urethra* a viscous and transparent Liquor, which defends it against the acrimony of the Salts of the Urine. And on the opposite side of the *Urethra*, upon its Internal Membrane, a little nearer the *Glans*, there is another small Gland which has the same office. These Glands were first observed by that diligent Anatomist Mr. *Cowper*. At the other end of the *Urethra*, around the Crown of the *Glans*, where it joins the *Preputium*, are several other small Glands, call'd, by that accurate Anatomist Dr. *Tyson*, *Glandula Odoriferae*: They separate a Liquor which lubricates the *Glans*, that the *Preputium* may slip easily upon it.

*Of the Vessels  
of the Tard.*

The *Yard* has a small Ligament, which arises from its back, a little distance from its root, which ties it to the upper part of the *Os Pubis*, that it may not hang too low. It receives two branches of Veins and Arteries from the *Hypogastrick Vessels*; besides others from the *Pudenda*.

The

The two Veins unite near its roots, and from one Trunk which runs along the upper side of the Yard. It has two Nerves from the *Os Sacrum*, and several Lymphaticks, which empty themselves into the Inguinal Glands.

The Yard has three pair of Muscles. *Of its Muscles and Erection.*  
The First is the *Erectores*; they rise from the *Ischium*, a little below the roots of the *Corpora Cavernosa*, they lie upon them, and are inserted into them. The Second are the *Acceleratores*, they rise from the root of the *Urethra*; they have several Fibres which join the Fibres of the *Sphincter Ani*, they lie upon the *Urethra*, betwixt the two former, and are inserted into the *Corpora Cavernosa*. The Third. Pair are the *Transversales*, they arise from the *Ischium* just by the *Erectores*, and run obliquely to the upper part of the Bulb of the *Urethra*. When these Muscles act, they compress the Veins upon the back of the *Penis* against the *Os Pubis*, which is the cause of the Erection as has been said.

## S E C T. XVI.

Of the Parts of Generation proper to  
Women.

**H**aving in the First Chapter described the Figure and Situation of the External Parts of Generation proper to Women ; I shall here only examine their Substance and Use, and then proceed to the Internal Parts.

*Of the Clitoris.*

The *Clitoris*, which is in the fore-part of the *Vulva*, is a long and round Body naturally about the bigness of the *Uvula* : it lies within the Skin ; nor does any part of it appear outwardly, except its Extremity, which is cover'd with a folding of the Skin made by the union of the *Nymphae*, call'd its *Preputium*. The Substance of the *Clitoris* is compos'd of two spongyous bodies, such as those of the Yard ; they rise at two different places in the lower part of the *Os Pubis*, and approaching one another, they unite and form the body of the *Clitoris*, whose Extremity, which is of an Exquisite Sense, is call'd its *Glans*. The two spongyous bodies, before they unite, are call'd the *Crura Clitoridis* ; they are twice as long as the body of the *Clitoris*. It has two Muscles, which rise from the Pro-tuberance of the *Ischium*, and are inserted in

*Its Muscles.*

in its spongy bodies. They erect the *Clitoris* in the Coition, after the same manner that the Muscles of the Yard do erect the Yard.

The *Clitoris* receives Veins and Arteries from the Hæmorrhoidal Vessels and the *Pudenda*, Nerves from the Intercostals, which are likewise distributed thro' all the Parts of the *Vulva*. Remark that the Veins on the one side of the *Vulva* communicate with those of the other side, and so do the Arteries communicate with one another.

The *Nymphae* have been sufficiently <sup>of the Nymphae.</sup> described already. Their internal Substance is spongy and full of Blood-Vessels, therefore they swell in the Act of Copulation; they receive Vessels and Nerves as the *Clitoris*: Their Use is to defend the internal parts from external Injuries, to increase Pleasure in Coition, to direct the course of the Urine: they are bigger in Married Women than in Maids.

The *Hymen* is a Circular Folding of the inner Membrane of the *Vagina*; which being broke at the first Copulation, its Fibres contract in three or four places, and form what they call *Glandula Myrtiformes*.

A little beyond the *Clitoris*, in the fore-part of the *Vulva*, above the Neck of the Womb, there is a little hole, which

Hymen.

*Urethra.*

which is the Orifice of the *Urethra*: It is naturally so large as to receive a Probe as big as a Goose-quill. The Length of the Neck of the Bladder is near about two fingers breadth. It has a little Muscle called its *Sphincter*, which embraces the *Urethra*, to hinder the involuntary running of the Urine; it joins the fleshy Fibres which are at the Orifice of the *Vagina*.

*Lacunæ.*

Between this Muscle and the inner Membrane of the *Vagina* there are several little Glands, whose Excretory Ducts are called *Lacunæ*; they pour a viscous Liquor, for the tickling of the Sex, into the lower part of the *Vulva*. These Glands are the Seat of *Gonorrhœa*'s in Women, as the *Prostate* are in Men; it hath the same use that they have. It hath been found all ulcerate in Women which have had a *Gonorrhœa*.

*Vagina.*

The *Vagina*, or Neck of the Womb, is a long and round Canal, which reaches from the *Pudendum* to the internal Mouth of the Womb. In Maids 'tis about five fingers breadth long, and one and a half wide; but in Women who have born Children, its length and bigness cannot be determined, because it lengthens in the time a Woman is with Child, and it dilates in the time of Birth. It lies betwixt the Bladder and the *Rectum*, with which last it is wrapt up in the same

same common Membrane from the *Peritoneum*; for this reason the Excrements come out sometimes by the *Vulva*, when this Intestine is wounded.

The Substance of the *Vagina* is composed of two Membranes, of which the inner which lines its Cavity, is nervous and full of wrinkles and *Sulci*, especially in its fore-part. It has three or four small Glands on that side next the *Rectum*, which pour into it a viscous humour in the time of Coition, of which we have spoken before.

The Wrinkles of this Membrane, are for the Friction of the *Balanus*, to encrease the Pleasure in Copulation, to detain the Seed that it run not out again, and that it may extend in the time of Gestation.

The External Membrane of the *Vagina* is made of Muscular Fibres, which (as occasion requires) dilate and contract, become long and short for adjusting its Cavity to the length and bigness of the Yard. At its lower part there is a Muscle of circular Fibres, like a Sphincter, and under it on each side of the *Vagina*, a Net-like *Plexus* of Blood-Vessels, which, with the Muscle, helps to straiten the Mouth of the *Vagina*, that it may grasp the Yard closely.

The Neck of the Womb receives Veins and Arteries from the Hypogastrick and the

the Hæmorrhoidal Vessels. Those from the Hypogastrick are dispersed in its upper part, and those from the Hæmorrhoidal in its lower part. These Vessels communicate with one another. It has Nerves from the *Os Sacrum*. Amongst other uses, the Neck of the *Matrix* serves for a Conduit to the *Menstrua*, and for a Passage to the *Fætus*.

Of the Situation of the Matrix.

The *Matrix* or Womb is situated in the lower part of the *Hypogastrium*, betwixt the Bladder and the Straight Gut; the *Os Pubis* is a fence to it before, the *Sacrum* behind, and the *Ilium* on each side; they form as it were a basin for it; but because it must swell whilst a Woman is with Child, therefore they leave a greater space in them than in Men; it is for this reason that Women are bigger in the haunches than Men.

Of its Figure. The Figure of the Womb is like a Pear, from its internal Orifice to its bottom, 'tis three fingers long, two broad, and almost as much thick. In Maids its Cavity will contain a big Almond: It changes both figure and dimensions in Women that are with Child; it presses the Bowels, and reaches to the Navel towards their Delivery, whilst at other times it does not pass the *Os Sacrum*.

The

The Womb is covered with the *Peritoneum*. Its Substance is composed of *Fleshy Fibres*, which are woven together like a Net, and they draw together and make several Bundles, which have several Directions for the better contracting of the Womb in the expulsion of the *Fœtus*. The Spaces between these Fibres, are fill'd up with thin and soft Membranes, which form an infinite number of Cells, upon which the Blood-Vessels run; turning and winding in great abundance. Upon these Membranes, especially towards the Cavity of the Womb, there are several Glands which separate an humour to lubricate the Cavity of the Womb.

The Bottom of the Womb grows thick, as it dilates; so that in the last Months of Gestation, 'tis at least an inch thick, where the *Placenta* adheres, because its roots run into the Substance of the Womb.

The Entry into the Cavity, or the Mouth of the Womb, joins the upper end of the *Vagina*, and makes a little Protuberance in the form of Lips, which resembles the Muzzle of a little Dog, by some called *Os Tincæ*. The Cavity of the Womb next its internal Orifice being more contracted than it is near its Bottom, is called *Collum Minus Uteri*. Its Surface is unequal, and amongst its *Ruga*, open several small Ducts which discharge a glutinous

glutinous Liquor to seal up the Mouth of the Womb in Gestation. These Ducts are affected in a *Fluor Albus*.

Of its Vessels. The Veins and Arteries of the Womb are branches of the Hypogastrick and Spermatick Vessels, whose larger ramifications inosculate with one another; the Spermatick Artery with the Hypogastrick, and the Vein with the Vein, as also the branches of one side of the Womb with those of the other. When the term of Accretion draws to a period, and the Blood which was wont to be spent in the encrease of the Body, being accumulated, distends the Vessels, it breaks forth once a Month at those of the Womb, because of all the Veins in the Body which stand perpendicular to the Horizon, these only are without Valves. This Evacuation is called the *Menstrua*, to which Men for the same reason are subject, but in them the redundant humour passes off by Urine as *Sanctorius* observes, and rarely by the Hæmorrhoidal Veins.

Its Nerves come from the Intercostals, and from those which come from the *Os Sacrum*. There are also several Lymphaticks upon its outside, which unite by little and little into great branches, and discharge themselves in the Reservoiry of the Chyle. All the Vessels of the Womb creep upon it by many turnings and windings, that they may not break when it is distended. The

The Womb is tied by two sorts of Ligaments ; by two broad, call'd *Ligamenta Lata* ; and by two round, call'd *Ligamenta Rotunda*. The two broad Ligaments are only a Production or Continuation of the *Peritoneum* from the sides of the Womb : for their largeness and figure, they are commonly compar'd to the Wings of a Bat. The *Ovaria* are fasten'd to one end of them, and the *Tuba Fallopiana* run along the other.

The two round Ligaments rise from the fore and lateral part of the bottom of the Womb, and pass, in the Productions of the *Peritoneum*, through the rings of the oblique and transverse Muscles of the *Abdomen* to the *Os Pubis*, where they expand like a Goose-Foot, and are partly inserted in the *Os Pubis*, and partly continued or joined to the *Musculus Membranosus* or *Fascia Lata*, on the upper part of the inside of the Thigh ; from thence comes the Pain that Women big with Child feel in this place. The Substance of these Ligaments is hard, but covered with a great number of Blood-Vessels : they are pretty big at the bottom of the Womb, but they grow smaller and flatter as they approach the *Os Pubis*.

The Spermatick Vessels in Women are of the Spermatick Vessels, four, as in Men ; they differ only in this, that they are shorter, that the Artery makes

makes several turnings and windings as it goes down, that it divides into two branches, of which the smallest goes to the *Ovarium*, the biggest divides into three more, of which one is bestowed upon the Womb, another upon the *Vagina*, and the third upon the Ligaments of the Womb and *Tuba Fallopiana*: 'tis the same as to the Vein.

Of the Situation and Figure of the Ovaria.

The *Ovaria* are tied about two fingers distance from the bottom of the Womb by the *Ligamenta Lata*. They are fixed to the *Peritonaeum* at the *ilia* by the Spermatick Vessels. They are of an Oval figure, a little flat upon their upper part, where the Spermatick Vessels enter.

Of their Membranes and Substance.

The *Ovaria* or Testicles are near half as big as Mens are; their Surface is unequal and wrinkled in Old Women, but smooth and equal in Maids; they are cover'd with a proper Membrane, which sticks close to their Substance, and with another common from the *Peritonaeum*, which covers also the Spermatick Vessels. Their Substance is composed of Fibres and Membranes, which leave little spaces in which there are several small Vesicles, round, full of water, which being boil'd, hardens like the White of an Egg; they have each of them two proper Membranes, upon which there are several small twigs of Veins, Arteries, and Nerves. These Vesicles are call'd Eggs, and they are

are  
Wor  
In C  
preg  
or c  
stan  
thro  
fall  
the N  
phat  
the  
T  
the  
they  
begin  
a T  
they  
Orin  
dilat  
whic  
edge  
The  
Wor  
Bris  
take  
The  
Men  
tern  
Wo  
five  
the  
Lyr

are of a different size, and number, in Women of different Ages. We observe in Cows, that such of them as are impregnant after Copulation, are contained or covered all over with a yellow Substance, which has a small hole in its side, through which they are thrust when they fall into the *Tuba Fallopiana*. Besides the Spermatick Vessels, the *Ovaria* have Nerves from the Intercostals and Lymphaticks, which discharge themselves into the common Receptacle.

The *Tuba Fallopiana* are situated on <sup>of the Tubes</sup> the right and left side of the Womb; <sup>Fallopianæ.</sup> they rise from its bottom by a narrow beginning, and they dilate in form of a Trumpet to their Extremities, where they are contracted again into a small Orifice, from whose circumference they dilate into a pretty broad Membrane, which looks as if it were torn at its edges, therefore call'd *Morsus Diaboli*. Their Cavity, where they open into the Womb, will scarcely admit of a Hog's-Bristle; but at its widest part, it will take in the end of one's Little finger. Their Substance is composed of two Membranes, which come from the External and Internal Membranes of the Womb. The Tubes are about four or five fingers breadth long; they have the same Veins, Arteries, Nerves and Lymphaticks as the *Ovaria*. These are

are all the Parts of Generation in Women.

*The Use of  
these Parts in  
Generation.*

So great is the Pleasure in the Act of Generation, that it alters the course of the Blood and Animal Spirits, which then move all the above-described Parts, which before lie quiet and at rest. The *Clitoris* is Erected, which by its Exquisite Sense affords a great deal of Delight ; the Glands about the Neck of the Womb, being press'd by the swelling of the neighbouring Parts, pour forth a Liquor to facilitate the Passage of the Yard, and to encrease the Pleasure. The Neck of the Womb contracts and embraces closely the Yard ; the Fibres of the Womb contract and open its Mouth (which at other times is extremely close) for the reception of the Spirituous part of the Seed ; and the branches of the Spermatick Artery which run upon the *Ligamenta Lata*, between the *Ovaria* and the *Tuba Fallopiana*, being distended with Blood, contract and pull the Extremities of the Tubes to the *Ovaria*, for the carrying the Seed to them. The Seed impregnates the Egg, which, from being transparent, becomes opake some time after ; 'tis cover'd with a thick and yellow Substance which presses it on all sides, and thrusts it out through a little hole in its middle ; so it falls into the Orifice of the Tubes, which dilate sufficiently for its passage into the Womb.

Some

Some, partly considering the closeness of the Mouth of the Womb, and partly the thickness of the Membranes of the *Ovaria* and *Ova*, do judge it impossible for the Seed to pass this way; therefore they think that it is taken up by the Veins which open in the Cavity of the *Vagina* and *Matrix*, where circulating, it ferments with the mass of Blood; from thence come all those Symptoms which appear in Conception: it enters and impregnates the Egg by the small twigs which are upon its Membranes. This Fermentation swells the Membranes of the *Tuba*, opens the Cavity of the Womb, and makes every thing ready for the reception of the Egg.

S E C T. XVII.

*Of the Generation of the Foetus; Of the Umbilical Vessels; Of the Placenta; Of the Posture of the Foetus, and term of Delivery.*

THE great and many Difficulties which attend the most plausible Account of the first Formation of the Parts of an Animal, and beginning of Motion in its Fluids; and the nice and curious Observations of Redi Leeuwenhoek and Others; have been sufficient Motives to most of the Moderns to throw off the Notion of Equivocal Generation. But though

though both Reason and Experiments convince us, that all the Parts of an Animal did exist, and its Fluids were in motion before Generation; yet whether the Animalcule was lodged in the Seed of the Male or Female *Ova*, is Matter of Controversie. The Arguments strongly alledged on both sides persuade me of the truth of what Dr. *Garden* says, that the Female *Ovum* is a proper *Nidus* for the *Animalcula in semine*. It is amazing to see the prodigious number of little Creatures like so many Tadpoles swimming every way in the Male Sperm of all Animals: Nor is it less curious to observe their Languid Motion in such as are poxed, and how they recover their former briskness as the distemper abates. *Leeuwenhoek* tells us of one whose Wife for some years did not conceive, because there were two *Animalcula* to be found in his Seed, there being no other visible hinderance on either side. These Animals are so small that 300000000 of them are not equal to a grain of Sand, whose diameter is but the  $\frac{1}{100}$  part of an Inch. Whilst the Seed thus abounds with *Animalcula*, there are not the least rudiments of an Animal to be seen in any part of the *Ovaria*: yet these likewise have a principal part in Generation, for without them there is no Conception; and even Bitches which have been Spado'd forget their

their usual Appetites, as if they were the only Spurs to Venery. The Yellow Substance which grows in the *Ovaria* of Cows, upon Conception, is very remarkable: It has a small Dint, and a Cicatrice in its middle, as if the *Ovum* had dropt out there, (as *Malpighius* thinks.) When the *Fœtus* is very small, I have observ'd it very large; but as the *Fœtus* grows bigger and bigger, this decays, and, I think, at last, even vanishes: nor is it to be seen before Conception, and in one Testicle only, when there is but one Calf. If all the *Animacula*, or a great many of them, did fasten and grow to the Womb, till such time as by their bigness, or want of Nourishment, they made one another drop off, (as *Leenwenhoek* thinks) Women could not but be sensible of their Evacuation, for they must be falling off, through the whole time of their being with Child. But when the *Animalcule* gets into an *Ovum* fit to receive it, and this falls through one of the *Tuba Fallopiana* into the Womb, the Humours which distill through the Vessels of the Womb, penetrating the Coats of the Egg, swell and dilate it, as the Sap of Earth does Seed thrown into the Ground. Or else the branches of the Veins and Arteries, whereby the Egg was tied in the *Ovarium* (which probably make the Umbilical Vessels)

Vessels) being broken, fasten with the Vessels of the Womb : then the *Placenta* begins to appear like a little Cloud upon one side of the External Coat of the Egg ; and at the same time the Spine of the *Embryo* is grown so big, as to be visible ; and a little after the *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum* appear like two small Bladders, and the Eyes next stand goggling out of the Head ; then the Beating of the Heart, or *Punctum Saliens*, is plainly to be seen ; and the Extremities discover themselves last of all.

of the Chorion.

of the Amnion.

Now the Membranes which involve the *Foetus* are the same with the Coats of the Egg. The External is call'd *Chorion* ; it is pretty thick, and a little rough on its outside to which the *Placenta* adheres. It embraces immediately the *Amnion*, or Internal Membrane, which is a fine and delicate Bag full of a clear Liquor, in the middle of which the *Foetus* swims. This Liquor is separated, for the Nourishment of the *Foetus*, by the Glands of the *Amnion*, from its Blood Vessels, which are fine branches of the Umbilical Vein and Arteries.

The Arteries rise from the extremity of the *Aorta*, or the beginning of the Iliacks of the *Foetus* ; and passing by the sides of the Bladder to the Navel, through which they pass, they give some branches to the *Amnion* and *Chorion*, and

and are afterwards divided into an infinite number of branches in the *Placenta*. The Vein rises by several roots or branches which are spread through all the Substance of the *Placenta*; it enters the *Chorion* and *Amnion*, to which it gives several twigs; and passing in at the Navel, it joins the *Vena Porta*, in the Substance of the Liver.

The Umbilical Vessels between the Navel and the *Placenta* are wrapt up in a Production of the *Chorion* and *Amnion*, which is generally about a foot and an half long, that the motion of the *Fœtus* might not pull the *Placenta* from the Womb. The Use of this Navel-string, is to carry the Maternal Blood by the Veins to the *Fœtus*, for its nourishment: That which is unfit for this Use, is carried back by the Arteries to the *Placenta*, whilst the *Fœtus* is still supplied with more by the Vein; so that there is a continual Circulation betwixt the Mother and the *Fœtus*.

Now the *Placenta* is a thick Cake of the *Placenta*, which grows upon the outside of the *Chorion*, in proportion as the *Fœtus* grows; it is of a Circular figure, at its biggest it is about two fingers breadth thick, and six or seven in diameter. The Branches of the Umbilical Vessels are spread through all its Substance; and indeed, it seems to be nothing else but a

F texture

*The Use of the  
Navel-string.*

texture of the Vein and Arteries, by whose Extremities opening into the sides of the Hypogastrick Vessels, the Circulation is perform'd between the Mother and the *Fœtus*; for that side of the *Placenta* which adheres to the Womb, appears to be nothing but the Extremities of an infinite number of small threads, which, in Labour, dropping out of the Pores in the sides of the Hypogastrick Blood-Vessels, into which they had insinuated themselves, are the occasion of the flowing of the *Lochia*, till the *Uterus* collapses, or the Pores, by the natural Elasticity of the Vessels, contract by degrees. Sometimes Twins have only one Common *Placenta*, and sometimes they have each a distinct one.

From the bottom of the Urinary Bladder of the *Fœtus* there goes a small Pipe to the Navel, where it seems to terminate, though the Urine of the *Fœtus* is received into a pretty large Bladder call'd the *Allantois*, which lies between the *Chorion* and the *Amnion*, on that side which is oppofite to the *Placenta*. I much doubted the Existence of this Membrane, till the Curious Dr. Hale show'd it me, in a Preparation, of which he has given a full Account in the *Philosophical Transactions*.

The

The *Fœtus* is almost of an Oval figure *of the Posture of the Fœtus*, whilst it lies in the Womb, for its Head hangs down with its Chin upon its Breast; its Back is round; with its Arms it embraces its Knees, which are drawn up to its Belly; and its Heels are close to its Buttocks, its Head upwards, and its Face is towards its Mother's Belly. But about the Ninth Month, its Head, which was always specifically lighter than any other Part, becomes specifically heavier, its Bulk bearing a much smaller proportion to its Substance than it did, and consequently it mustumble in the Liquor which contains it; so its Head falls down, its Feet get up, and its Face turns towards its Mother's Back: but because then it is an irksom, though favourable Posture for its Exit, the motion it makes for its relief, give frequent Pains to its Mother, which causes a Contraction of the Womb, for the Expulsion of the *Fœtus*. When the Child presents in any other Posture, it should be carefully put back again, and, if possible, turn'd to the right way: If that can't be done, it should be brought out by the Feet.

## C H A P. III.

*Of the Thorax, or Middle Cavity.*

## S E C T. I.

*Of the Breasts.*

**H**AVING already describ'd the Figure, Bounds, and External Parts of the *Thorax*, we come now to examine the Substance and Use of its several Parts; amongst which, the first that presents it self is the *Breasts*.

The Substance of the *Breasts* is composed of a great number of Glands of an Oval Figure, which lie in a great quantity of Fat. Their Excretory Ducts, as they approach the *Nipple*, join and unite together, till at last they form seven, eight, or more small Pipes call'd *Tubuli Lactiferi*, which have several cross Canals by which they communicate with one another, that if any one of them be stopt, the Milk which was brought to it might not stagnate, but pass through by the other Pipes, which all terminate in the Extremity of the *Nipple*.

The

The Nipple is a Spongy Substance, made of two orders of Fibres: the smallest make a fine Net-work within the larger spaces of the Net-work of the bigger Fibres. Through it pass the *Tubuli Lactiferi*, which grow smaller and smaller to their Extremities, that the Milk might not run out but when the Breasts are full, or upon Suction: It has an Exquisite Sense, and a small Erection when it is handled.

The Arteries and Veins of the Breasts are Branches of the Subclavian and Intercostal. They have Nerves from the Vertebral Pairs, and from the sixth Pair of the Brain.

The Use of the Breasts is to separate the Milk for the Nourishment of the *Fœtus*. The Arteries which terminate in the Glands, which compose the Substance of the Breasts, bring the Blood pregnant with a Chyle which has received its last Perfection by its Circulation through the Lungs; this Chyle being separated by the Glands of the Breasts, runs through the *Tubuli Lactiferi* upon the Suction of the Child.

The Breasts in Men are very small, they are chiefly for an Ornament. I have seen some Men who have had Milk in them.

## S E C T. II.

## Of the Diaphragma, or Midriff.

Under the Breasts lie the Muscles and Bones which compose the forepart of the *Thorax*; these are described in their proper places: Having therefore cut them up, and laid the Cavity of the *Thorax* open, the *Diaphragma*, *Pleura*, *Mediastimum*, Heart, and Lungs appear.

Of the two  
Muscles which  
compose the  
Midriff.

The *Diaphragma* is composed of two Muscles, which divide the middle from the lower Cavity. The first and Superior Muscle arises from the *Sternum* and the ends of the last Ribs, on each side. Its Fibres, from this semi-circular Origination, tend towards their Centre, and terminate in a Tendon or *Aponeurosis*, which hath always been taken for the nervous part of the Midriff. The second and Inferior Muscle comes from the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, by two Productions, of which that on the right side comes from the first, second and third *Vertebrae* of the Loins; that on the left side is somewhat shorter; and both these Productions join and make the lower part of the Midriff, which joins its Tendon with the Tendon of the other, so as that they make but one Membrane, or rather Partition.

The

The Midriff is cover'd with a Membrane from the *Pleura* on its upper side, and by the *Peritonaeum* on its lower side ; it is pierced in its middle, for the Passage of the *Vena Cava* ; in its lower part, for the *Oesophagus* ; and the Nerves which go to the upper Orifice of the Stomach, and betwixt the Productions of the Inferior Muscle, pass the *Aorta*, the Thoracick Duct, and the *Vena Azygos*.

The Midriff receives Arteries and *of its Vessels* ; Veins call'd *Phrenica* from the *Cava* and *Aorta* ; and sometimes on its lower part, two Branches from the *Vena Adiposa*, and two Arteries from the *Lumbares*. It has two Nerves which come from the third *Vertebrae* of the Neck, which pass through the Cavity of the *Thorax*, and are dispersed in the Muscles of the Midriff.

The Midriff, in its natural situation, is Convex on the upper side towards the Breast, and Concave on its lower side towards the Belly : therefore when its Fibres swell and contract, it must become plain on each side, and consequently the Cavity of the Breast is enlarged, to give liberty to the Lungs to receive the Air in the Inspiration ; and the Stomach and Intestines are pressed for the distribution of the Chyle ; but it diminishes the Cavity of the Breast, when it resumes its natural Situation,

104 *Of the Pleura, Mediastinum, &c.*  
and presses the Lungs, for the Expulsion  
of the Air in Expiration.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Pleura, Mediastinum, and Thymus.*

*Of the Pleura.* **T**HE *Pleura* is a double Membrane which covers all the Cavity of the *Thorax*; it arises from the *Vertebra* of the Back, ascends on each side upon the Ribs to the middle of the *Sternum*. It is fixed to the *Periosteum* of the Ribs to the internal Intercostal Muscles, and it covers the Midriff. Its side towards the Cavity is smooth and equal, but that which is fixed to the Ribs is rough.

*Of the Mediastinum.* The *Mediastinum* is a double Membrane, formed by the continuation of the *Pleura*, which comes from the *Sternum*, and goes straight down through the middle of the *Thorax* to the *Vertebrae*, dividing the Cavity in two. It contains, in its doubling, the Heart; in its *Pericardium*, the *Vena Cava*, the *Oesophagus*, and the Stomachick Nerves. The Membranes of the *Mediastinum* are finer and thinner than the *Pleura*, and they have a little Fat. The *Mediastinum* receives branches of Veins and Arteries from the Mammillary and Diaphragmatick, and one Proper, call'd *Mediastina*; its Nerves come

come from the Stomachick ; it has also some Lymphaticks which open in the Thoracick Duct. The *Mediastinum* divides the *Thorax* into two parts, to the end that one Lobe of the Lungs may officiate, if the other be hindred by a Wound on the other side of the *Thorax*. Sometimes there is a Matter contained betwixt its Membranes immediately under the *Sternum*, which may occasion the Trepaning of this place.

The *Thymus* is a Conglobate Gland of the *Thymus*, situated in the upper part of the *Thorax* under the *Clavicula*, where the *Cava* and *Aorta* divide into the Subclavian Branches. This Gland is big in Infants, but as they grow in Age, it grows less. Its Arteries and Veins are branches of the *Carotides* and *Jugulars*. It has Nerves from the *Par Vagum*, and its Lymphatick Vessels discharge themselves in the *Ductus Thoracicus*.

The learned Dr. *Tyson* supposes the Use of this Gland to be for a *Diverticulum* to the Chyle in the Thoracick-Duct of a *Fœtus*, whose Stomach being always full of the Liquor in which it swims, must keep the Thoracick-Duct distended with Chyle ; because the Blood which the *Fœtus* receives from the Mother fills its Veins, and hinders the free entrance of the Chyle into the Subclavian Vein. Nor can any Argument

ment be drawn from the Valves in the Lympheducts of the *Thymus*, against this Opinion ; for I have more than once Injected them with Wax up to the *Thymus*, by the Thoracick Duct, as Mr. *Comper* likewise observes.

## S E C T. IV.

## Of the Pericardium, Heart, and its Parts.

Of the Pericardium.

THE Pericardium is a thick Membrane of a Conick figure, it resembles a Purse, and contains the Heart in its Cavity. Its Basis is pierced in five places, for the passage of the Vessels, which enter and come out of the Heart ; It lies in the Duplicature of the *Median-stinum*, which firmly adheres to it, as its Point does to the middle Tendon of the Midriff. It receives its Vessels from the Mammary and *Phrenica*, Nerves from the Recurrent and Diaphragmatick. It has Lymphaticks, which discharge themselves in the Thoracick-Duct.

Of the Water contained in the Pericardium.

The Use of the Pericardium is to contain a spoonful or two of a clear Water, which is separated by some small Glands in the Pericardium, that the Surface of the Heart may not grow dry by its continual Motion.

Of the Situation, Figure, and Connexion of the Heart.

The Heart is situated in the middle of the Thorax, between the two Lobes of the

the Lungs ; it is of a Conick figure, whose *Basis* is the upper end, and its *Apex* or Point is the lower end, which is turned a little to the left side, that the Right Auricle may be lower than the Left ; by which means the reflucent Blood in the *Cava* ascends the more easily ; for, like other Liquors, the Blood will rise to the same height in both Legs of a reflex Tube. For the same reason, the *Aorta* runs first upwards, before it turns down, that the force of the returning Blood from the lower Parts may be the greater.

The Heart is tied to the *Mediastinum*, to the *Pericardium*, and sustained by the great Vessels which bring and carry back the Blood. It is cover'd by a Membrane, which is the Proper Membrane of the Muscles ; its Basis is always surrounded with Fat. It has two Veins, *of its Vessels*, which open into the *Cava*, immediately before it empties it self into the Auricle, and they are accompanied with two Arteries from the *Aorta*, which run through all the Substance of the Heart ; they are call'd the *Corona* Vessels. The Arteries bring the Blood for the Nutrition and Motion of the Heart, and the Veins carry back what remains. The Branches of the Veins on the Right side communicate with those of the Left. In like manner do the Arteries of each side commu-

communicate with one another ; and it is the same, though not every where so evident, in all the Parts of the Body. The Heart receives a multitude of small Nerves from the Eighth Pair, particularly they creep in great numbers about the *Aorta*, and on the left Ventricle. It has also some Lymphaticks, which discharge themselves in the Thoracick Duct.

*Of the Auriculae.* At the Basis of the Heart there are two *Auriculae* or little Ears, one on the right, the other on the left side. In the right Ear opens the *Vena Cava*, in the left the *Vena Pulmonalis* : The first discharges the Blood that it receives from the *Cava* into the Right Ventricle, and the second thrusts the Blood that comes from the *Vena Pulmonalis* into the Left Ventricle. The Left is less, but thicker than the Right. Their Substance is composed of two orders of Muscular Fibres, which terminate in the Tendon in the Basis of the Heart ; and at the right Ear there is a Circle like to a Tendon, where the *Cava* ends. Their External Surface is smooth ; their Internal is unequal, full of small fleshy Pillars, which send out small Fibres that cross and go thwart one another ; and betwixt these Pillars there are as many Furrows ; they receive Nerves from the branches of the Eighth Pair.

Pair. They have the same motions of *Systole* and *Diastole* as the Heart, which we shall explain afterwards. Their Use *Their Use* is to receive the Blood, which is brought by the *Vena Cava* and *Pulmonalis*, and by them to be thrust into the Ventricle of the Heart.

In the Heart there are two Cavities or *Ventricles*, which answer to the two Ears, one on each side; the sides of these Cavities are very unequal, full of Fibres and little fleshy Productions, long and round, of a different figure and bigness, call'd *Columnæ* or Pillars. Betwixt these Fibres there are several furrows in the sides of the Ventricle, especially in the left Ventricle, they are deeper and larger; they contribute much to the close contraction of the Ventricle. And because the side of the right Ventricle is much thinner than the left, therefore there is often a small bundle of fleshy Fibres, which come from the middle partition to its opposite side, to hinder it from dilating too much.

The Right Ventricle seemeth wider than the Left, which is longer and narrower than the Right, and its sides stronger and thicker. The two Ventricle are separated by the *Septum Medium*, which is properly the inside of the left Ventricle, being its Fibres are continued with the Fibres of the opposite

site side of the same Ventricle. The Vessels which enter and come out of the Heart, are the *Vena Cava*, the *Arteria*, and *Vena Pulmonalis*, and the *Aorta* or *Arteria Magna*.

*Of the Right Ventricle, and of its Valves.*

The Right Ventricle receives the Blood from the *Vena Cava*, through the right Ear; and at the mouth of the Ventricle there are placed three Valves, made of a thin Membrane; they are of a triangular figure, and are call'd *Tricuspides*; their Bases are fix'd to the mouth of the Ventricle, and their Points and Sides tied by small Fibres to the fleshy Productions. So that when the Ventricle contracts, and the opposite sides approach one another, the points of the Valves meet, and their lateral Strings being relaxed, their sides are likewise made to join one another by the Blood which gets between them and the sides of the Ventricle; the three Valves thus united, form a concave Cone which hinders the return of the Blood to the Atricle. It is therefore thrust out at

*Of the Valves of the Arteria Pulmonalis.*

The *Arteria Pulmonalis*, which rises immediately out of the Right Ventricle; its Mouth is less than the *Cava*; it has three Valves, call'd *Sigmoidales*, or *Semilunares*, because they resemble a Half-Moon, or Segment of a Circle; their Substance is Membranous. When they separate, they give passage to the Blood, from

from the Ventricle into the Artery ; but they shut the Passage, and are thrust together by the Blood, if it endeavours to return. The *Arteria Pulmonalis* carries the Blood to

The *Vena Pulmonalis*, which discharges it self through the left Ear into the Ventricle of the same side. At the Orifice of this Ventricle there are two Valves call'd *Mitralis*, because they resemble a Mitre ; they are broader than the other Valves ; they are situated and have the same Use as the *Tricuspides* in the Right Ventricle.

The *Aorta*, or Great Artery, rises immediately out of the Left Ventricle ; it has three Valves, which have the same Use and Figure as the *Semi-lunares* in the *Arteria Pulmonalis*.

The Heart is a compound Muscle ; of the Substance of the Heart, and of the Order of its Fibres. Its Substance is made of Fibres of the same Nature as those of other Muscles : There are several Orders of them, which have different Directions, and all their Tendons are in the Basis of the Heart. The first, or External Order, is of Fibres, which surround the whole Heart ; they go in an Oblique or Spiral Line from the left to the right, except on the Surface of the right side ; some of its finest Fibres go in a straight Line from the Basis to the Point. The second or next Order surrounds also the whole

whole Heart ; they have a contrary Direction, which is from the Right to the Left in an Oblique or Spiral Line. The next Orders are only proper to the Left Ventricle. The first, which is on the external side of the Ventricle, goes in an Oblique Line from the Left to the Right. The second Order is on the inside, or that which makes the *Septum Medium*, or Partition-Wall of the Ventricle ; they go in an Oblique Line from the Right to the Left, and they are continued with the foregoing Fibres at the Point of the Heart.

All these Orders of Fibres come together, as to one common Centre, at the Point of the Heart : But,

*Obs.* That all the Fibres of the same Order, do not always go from the Basis to the Point ; for some, after they have gone about half way obliquely from the one side, turn up obliquely, and are inserted in the Basis on the other side. Neither do all the Fibres in the same order keep together, for some intermix with the Fibres of the next Order ; so, in separating these Orders, many Fibres are broken. Some of the Fibres in the Internal Orders, proper to the Left Ventricle, terminate in the fleshy Productions of the same Ventricle. The Bone which is found in the Basis of the Hearts of several Beasts, is nothing but the Tendons

Tendons of the Fibres of the Heart ossify'd : it is sometimes found in Men.

This Muscle has two Motions, which they call *Systole* and *Diastole*. The *Systole* is when the Fibres of the Heart contract, its Sides swell, and its Cavities are strongly press'd on all sides. The *Diastole* is when this Muscle ceaseth to act ; its Fibres are lengthened, its Sides fall, and its Cavities become large and wide.

Having describ'd the Heart and its Parts, let us now consider the Circulation of the Blood, which is performed by means of this Muscle. The *Vena Cava Ascendens* and *Descendens* unite in one, and open into the right Ear, where they unite ; there is a little Protuberance made by their Coats on the inside of the Canal like an *Isthmus*, which directs the Blood both of the one and the other into the Ear, and so hinders them from rushing one upon another. The right Ear in its *Diastole* receives the Blood from the *Vena Cava*, which by its *Systole* is thrust into the right Ventricle ; (for the tendinous Circle which is at the Mouth of the *Cava* contracts, and hinders the Blood to return into it) which at the same time is in its *Diastole*. In the *Systole* of the right Ventricle the Blood is thrust into the *Arteria Pulmonalis*, (for it cannot return into the Ear, because

because of the *Valvula Tricuspides*) which communicates with the *Vena Pulmonalis*, which carries back the Blood into the left Ear, which in its *Systole* thrusts the Blood into the left Ventricle, which is then in its *Diaastole*. In the *Systole* of this Ventricle the Blood is thrust into the *Aorta*, (for it cannot return into the Ear, because of the *Valvula Mitralis*) which carries it through all the Body. Now the *Aorta*, when it comes out of the Heart, ascends a little upwards, and then turns downwards to form the descending Trunk, for the reason already given ; and from the upper side of this turning the Cervical and Axillary Vessels do arise : by this artifice the Blood collides against the sides of the *Aorta* ; its force is broken, part of it is taken in by the mouths of the ascending branches, but its greatest part is directed downwards.

From what has been said, it appears, that both Auricles contract at the same time, as likewise do the Ventricles ; and that when the Auricles are contracted, the Ventricles are dilated, & vice versa. To account for this Alternate Motion of the Auricles and Ventricles, let us suppose them all full of Blood : And that whatsoever the cause of the Contraction of the Heart is (whether it be the Blood, or Animal Spirits, or perhaps both, which is

is not our present Enquiry) it is not continued, but acts by Impulses, as appears from the *Systole* and *Diastole* of the Heart. Now though this Cause might at first act both upon the Auricles and Ventricle at the same time, yet its Action must necessarily become alternate; for the strength of the Ventricle being greater than that of the Auricles, they contract; and by their contraction, hinder that of the Auricles, which endeavour likewise to expell the Blood by which they are distended, but cannot perform it till the dilatation of the Ventricle makes room for its reception.

Let us now consider which way the Blood circulates in the *Fætus*; for this you must observe, that in the right Ear, on the lower side of the Protuberance of the *Cava*, just opposite to the mouth of the *Cava Ascendens*, there is a Hole call'd the *Foramen Ovale*, which opens into the *Vena Pulmonalis*; this Hole has a Valve which suffers the Blood to enter the Vein, but hinders it to come back again. There is likewise a Passage or Canal which runs from the Trunk of the *Arteria Pulmonalis* to the Trunk of the *Aorta*.

Now the Blood which comes from the *Placenta*, by the *Umbilical Vein*, into the *Porta*, is sent into the *Cava* by

by a Canal which goes straight from the Trunk of the *Porta* to the Trunk of the *Cava* in the Liver. This ascends the *Vena Cava*, and is directly thrown through the *Foramen Ovale*, into the *Vena Pulmonalis*, which carries it into the left Ventricle, which throws it into the *Aorta*, to be distributed through all the Body. But the Blood which comes down the *Vena Cava Descendens* is diverted by the *Isthmus of the Cava*, from the *Foramen Ovale*, and falls into the right Ventricle, which thrusts it into the *Arteria Pulmonalis*, from whence part of it is immediately carry'd by the communicating Canal into the *Aorta*. The reason of these Passages in a *Fœtus*, was, because the Blood could not all pass through the Pulmonary Blood-Vessels, they being too much compressed by the Substance of the Lungs; but as soon as the child is born, and the pressure is taken off from the Blood-Vessels by the distension of the Lungs with Air, the Blood finding a free passage through the Lungs, runs no more by the communicating Canal, whose direction likewise is not now so favourable for its reception as before; because the Pulmonary Artery being stretched out with the Lungs, makes it go off at right Angles, and therefore it dries up. And now the Pulmonary Vein being distended with the

the greater quantity of Blood which it receives from the Lungs, the Valve of the *Foramen Ovale* is pressed close to its Sides, denying a passage to the Blood from the *Cava*, to be mix'd with the rest of the Blood. By this you see, that the Blood which comes from the *Vena Cava Descendens* passes only through the left Ventricle, whilst the Blood which comes from the *Cava Ascendens* passes only through the right Ventricle.

Thus having shewed what way and by what means the Blood circulates through the Heart; let us now reflect a little upon the Quickness of its Motion. Each Ventricle will at least contain an Ounce of Blood, and therefore we may safely suppose that the Heart throws into the *Aorta* an Ounce of Blood every time it contracts. The Heart contracts 4000 times in one Hour, or sometimes more, and sometimes less, according to the different Temperaments, Sexes and Ages: From which, it follows, that there passes through the Heart every Hour 4000 Ounces, or 350 Pound of Blood. Now the whole mass of Blood is said to be about 25 Pound; so that a quantity of Blood equal to the whole mass of Blood passes through the Heart 14 times in one Hour, which is about once every four Minutes. I say,  
a quan-

a quantity which is equal to the whole mass of Blood, and not the whole mass it self; for it is not to be supposed that the Blood which goes to the Extremities can return to the Heart, as soon as the Blood which goes only to the Kidneys or Liver.

The Velocity and quantity of Blood, together with the time it takes to run in different Blood-Vessels, differ according to the different lengths and orifices of the Vessels, according to the greater and lesser compression the Vessels receive in the different Parts through which they run, according to different quantity of Secretions from the Vessels in the several Parts of the Body, according as the Vessels have more or less turnings and windings, and according as they divide into more or fewer Branches. These things determinate the Velocity, Time, and Quantity of Blood in the several Vessels of the Body.

In the Blood there is much Volatile Salt and Spirits, some Phlegm and Sulphur, a little Earth, but little or no Fix'd Salt. Alcali's dissolve it, and Acids coagulate it.

**S E C T.**

## S E C T. V.

## Of the Lungs.

THE Lungs are in the middle of the *Cavity of the Thorax*; they are divided into two Lobes by the *Media-stinum*, and the left is ordinarily subdivided into two more. The Figure of both Lobes together resemble a Cow's Foot, being a little Concave betwixt the two Lobes, where they embrace the Heart, and behind, where they lie upon the *Vertebrae*; but before, where they touch the *Sternum* and Ribs, they are Convex. The Colour of the Lungs in *a Fætus* is of a pale Red; but after the *Air* has once entred them, they lose their Red, and remain always Pale; yet in Adults they are variegated with the one and the other. They are tied to the *Sternum* by the *Media-stinum* before, to the *Vertebrae* by the *Pleura* behind, where it rises from the *Vertebrae*, to the Heart by the *Vena* and *Arteria Pulmonalis*, and sometimes to the *Pleura*, where it covers the Ribs, particularly in the left Side, and especially after a *Pleurisie*.

The Lobes of the Lungs are cover'd with a double Membrane; the External *branes* of the *Lungs*, a production of the *Pleura*; The Internal

not

## Of the Lungs.

not only covers immediately the Substance of the Lungs, but its inner *Lamina* fill up the Interstices which are between the bunches of the small Lobes with little Vesicular Cells: The fine Capillary Blood-Vessels are so thick upon this Membrane, that it seems to be nothing but a Net-work of Veins and Arteries.

*Of the Structure of the Lungs.*

The Substance of the Lungs is composed of an infinite number of little Lobes of various figures and magnitudes; but their Surfaces are so adapted to one another, as to leave but very few and small Interstices. These Lobes are disposed like so many bunches of Grapes upon the sides of the *Bronchia*. Each little Lobe contains within its own proper Membrane an infinite number of small and little Orbicular Vesicles, which leave small Interstices between them, which are full of small Membranes, like those which tie the Lobes together. The Extremities of the Branches of the Wind pipe open into the Cavities of the Vesicles, which are probably formed by its Membranes; but the Capillary Blood-Vessels are only spread upon the Vesicles like a Net, with frequent and large Inosculations.

*Of the Vessels of the Lungs.*

Now the Vessels which enter the Lungs, are the *Trachea* or *Aspera Arteria*, by which we draw in the Air; the *Arteria Pulmonalis*, which comes from the right Ventricle;

Ventricle ; and *Vena Pulmonalis*, whose Trunk opens in the left Auricle of the Heart ; each of these divides into two branches, for the two great Lobes of the Lungs, where they are sub-divided into as many branches as there are little Lobes or Vesicles in the Lungs. Wherever there is a branch of the *Trachea*, there is a branch of the Vein and Artery ; and the *Trachea* is always in the middle. Upon the Branches of the *Trachea Arteria*, which are called *Bronchi*, run a small Artery call'd (by Mr. Ruysh) *Arteria Bronchialis*, a small Vein which *Sommichellius* calls *Vena Pneumonica*. The Artery comes from the *Aorta*, and the Vein opens into the *Subclavian*. The Blood in the *Arteria Pulmonalis* being of the Nature of Venal Blood, and all Secretion being perform'd in the Arteries, the Nourishment for the Lungs must be brought by the *Arteria Bronchialis*. There is the same contrivance for the Nutrition of the Liver. Upon the *Bronchi*, even to their minutest Ramifications, run likewise the fine Threads of the Eighth Pair of Nerves. Besides these, the Lungs have Lymphaticks, which discharge themselves into the Thoracick Duct ; but they are smaller, and make more frequent Inosculations than I have observ'd any where else.

## Of the Lungs.

of the Trachea Arteria.

This is the Passage of the Vessels through the Lungs ; but because the *Trachea Arteria* has a particular Structure, it demands a particular Examination. It is a Canal situated in the forepart of the Neck, before the *Oesophagus* ; its upper end is call'd *Larynx*, from thence it descends to the fourth *Vertebra* of the Back, where it divides, and enters the Lungs. This Canal is made of Annular Cartilages, which are at small and equal distances from one another. These Cartilages grow smaller and smaller as they approach the Lungs ; and those of the *Bronchi* are so close to one another, that, in Expiration, the second enters within the first, and the third within the second, and so the following always enters the preceeding. Betwixt the *Larynx* and the Lungs these Cartilages make not compleat Rings ; but their hind-part, which is contiguous to the *Oesophagus*, is membranous, that they may the better contract and dilate, and give way to the Aliments as they go down the *Oesophagus*. But the Cartilages of the *Bronchi* are compleatly Annular ; yet their Capillary Branches have no Cartilages, but, instead of them, small Circular Ligaments which are at pretty large distances from one another. The Use of the Cartilages is to keep the passage for the Air always open ;

of its Cartilages.

open ; but in the Capillary *Bronchi* they would hinder the subsiding of the Vesicles.

These Cartilages are tied together by *of its Mem-  
branes.* two Membranes, the one External, and the other Internal. The External is composed of circular Fibres ; it covers the whole *Trachea* externally. The Internal is of an Exquisite Sense, it covers the Cartilages internally. It is composed of three distinct Membranes : The first is woven of two Orders of Fibres. Those of the first Order are Longitudinal, for the shortening the *Trachea* ; they make the Cartilages approach and enter one another. The other Order is of circular Fibres, for the contracting the Cartilages. When these two Orders of Fibres act, they help, with the External Membrane, in Expiration, in Coughing, and in altering the Note of our Voice. The second Membrane is altogether glandulous, and the Excretory Vessels of these Glands open in the Cavity of the *Trachea* ; they separate a Liquor for the moistening the Cavity, and for defending it from the Acrimony of the Air. The third and last is a Net of Veins, Nerves, and Arteries. The Veins are Branches of the *Vena Cava* ; the Nerves, of the *Recurrent* ; and the Arteries, of the *Carotides*.

*Of the Use of the Lungs.* From the Structure of the Lungs thus explain'd, the learned *Pitcairn* has mechanically deduced the great Effect they, by means of the Air, produce upon the Blood. For whilst the *Fætus* is in the Womb, the Vesicles of the Lungs lying flat upon one another, compress all the Capillary Blood-Vessels which are spread upon them : but as soon as we are born, the Air, by its Gravity and Elasticity, rushes into the empty Branches of the *Trachea Arteria*, and blows up the Vesicles into Spheres ; by which means the compression being taken off from the Blood-Vessels, and they equally expanded with the Lungs, all the Blood has a free passage through the Pulmonary Artery. But when the Air is thrust out again by the contraction of the Cavity of the *Thorax*, it being a fluid body, compresses the Vesicles and Blood-Vessels upon them every where equally. By this compression, the red globules of the Blood, which, through their languid motion in the Veins, were grown too big to circulate in the fine Capillary Vessels, are broken and divided again in the *Serum*, and the Blood made fit for Nutrition and Secretion. This pressure of the Air upon the Blood-Vessels, I have demonstrated to be equal to 100 Pound weight, and in Coughing or Crying it may exceed 400 Pound.

But

But though these are the necessary Consequences of Respiration, yet several Experiments encline me to think that some particles of the Air must likewise enter the Blood-Vessels, and mix with the Blood in the Lungs. For, First, I am assured, from repeated Experiments, That Air will escape through the Pores of any number of Bladders, when compressed only by the weight of the Water into which it is sunk ; and therefore the pressure of 100 Pound weight, in ordinary Respiration, must thrust some particles of it into the Blood-Vessels. Secondly, The Honourable Mr. Boyle, in his *New Pneumatical Experiments*, shows us, That Animals cannot live when shut up in common Air, though, by a Gage, he has found it to retain its wonted pressure, and tho' the Receiver has been immers'd in Water cooled with a Solution of Sal-Armoniack. The same *Experiments* assure us, That Animals will live longer shut up in compressed Air, than in common Air ; and that when they are dying in the common Air, they may be revived by pressing in more fresh Air. Lastly, It may be demonstrated, That the difference between the Gravity of the Air in the City and that of the Country, (which can be but very small, upon the account of the *Effluvia*, as the Barometer shows it to

be) can never be cause of that Difficulty of Breathing which some have in the one, and not in the other ; for they are not near so sensible of the different gravities of the Air in the same place, as they are of a much smaller difference in two distinct and remote places, where the Contents of the Air are different.

I could produce several other Arguments, but that I think these demonstrative ; and therefore I shall only Answer one Objection, which is, That if the Air, in Inspiration, entred the Blood-Vessels, the Lungs could not be blown up ; and, in Expiration, it will pass out through the open branches of the *Trachea*, rather than into small Vessels full of a dense Fluid. Now if the Air pass'd as fast into the Blood Vessels, as it is drawn in by the Lungs, it is true, the Lungs could not be distended ; but if a few Particles only enter, this does not hinder their Distention. But the Air does not enter the Blood-Vessels, in Inspiration, for it requires a considerable Pressure to force it through their Pores : This therefore is done in Expiration, when the Air presses the Lungs ; for if it went easily out again the way it came in, that necessary Attrition of the Blood could not be performed.

S E C T.

## S E C T. VI.

## Of the Larynx.

THE Upper end of the *Trachea* <sup>Its Situation.</sup> *Arteria* is call'd the *Larynx*. It lies below the root of the Tongue, before the *Pharynx*. It is compos'd of five Cartilages, which sometimes, in Old Men, become as hard as Bones.

The First is the *Scutiformis*, or *Scutum* of the Cartilages, because of its Figure. It makes <sup>lato</sup> *Scutum* *formis*, *Adami*. It is that Protuberance in the forepart of the *Larynx* call'd *Pomum Adami*. It is about an Inch broad, but not so long. It's Concave within, and Convex without. Its four Angles have each a small Production; the two upper, which are longer, are tied to the Horns of the *Os Hyoides*, and the two lower to the second Cartilage, which is call'd *Keuocoides*, or *Annularis*, because it resembles a Ring. <sup>of the Annularis.</sup> It's very large and thick behind, which part is like the Stone of a Ring, and it grows narrower to its forepart; it's situated below the other Cartilages of the *Larynx*, they stand upon it as upon a Basis, and by it they are tied to the *Trachea*.

The Third and Fourth are alike, and <sup>of the Arytenoides.</sup> have one common Name, which is the *Arytenoides*, they reach from the middle of the Concave side of the *Thyroides* to the upper and back-part of the

## Of the Larynx.

*Annularis*, and they make that Chink or *Rimula*, which is the Mouth of the *Larynx*, call'd *Glottis*. Betwixt those and the sides of the *Thyroides* there are two small Cavities on each side, form'd by the Muscles and Membranes which join them together; in which if a little Drink or Bread fall, as sometimes happens, when one laughs or speaks in eating or drinking, it causes a violent Cough, and a great Tickling.

*Of the Epiglottis.*

The Fifth and last Cartilage, is the *Epiglottis*; it's of a softer Substance than the others; it resembles a little Tongue; it is tied by its basis to the upper and middle part of the Concave side of the *Thyroides*: Its Use is to cover the *Glottis* in eating and drinking; for the Aliments, by their weight, press it close down upon the *Glottis*, and they pass over, without entring the *Larynx*, into the *Oesophagus*: but when the Aliments are past, the *Epiglottis*, by its natural resort, which is common to all Cartilages, lifts up again, and gives way to the Air, for the Respiration. When we Speak or Laugh, the *Glottis* must necessarily be open for the passage of the Air; therefore it is not convenient to Speak, whilst we are Eating or Drinking.

*Of the Muscles of the Larynx.* The *Larynx* has two pair of Common Muscles, and five pair Proper.

The

The First of the Common Muscles <sup>Sternothy-</sup>  
is the *Sternothyroïdes*; it arises from the <sup>roïdes.</sup>  
upper part of the inside of the *Sternum*,  
and ascending on the sides of the *Trachea*  
*Arteria*, it is inserted to the lower part  
of the sides of the *Cartilago Scutiformis*:  
When these Muscles act, they pull this  
Cartilage downwards.

The Second is the *Hyothyroïdes*; it <sup>Hyothyroï-</sup>  
arises from the lower part of the *Osses*.  
*Hyoides*, and descending, is inserted  
into the lower part of the *Scutiformis*,  
near the former: They pull up the  
*Larynx*.

The First of the Proper Muscles is <sup>Cricothyroï-</sup>  
the *Cricothyroïdes*; it ariseth from the <sup>des.</sup>  
forepart of the Cartilage *Cricoides*, and  
running under the *Thyroïdes*, it is inserted  
into the inside of that Cartilage.

The Second is the *Crico-Arytenoides* <sup>Crico-Ary-</sup>  
*Lateralis*; it ariseth from the lateral <sup>tenoides.</sup>  
part of the *Cricoides*, and ascending, is  
inserted to the lateral part of the *Aryte-*  
*noides*; this dilates the *Arytenoides*.

The Third is the *Crico-Arytenoides* <sup>Crico-Ary-</sup>  
*Posticus*; it arises from the back-part of <sup>noides.</sup>  
the Cartilage *Cricoides*, and is inserted  
into the *Arytenoides*, near the former.

The Fourth is the *Thyro-Arytenoides*; <sup>Thyro-Ary-</sup>  
it ariseth from the internal and Concave <sup>tenoides.</sup>  
side of the *Scutiformis*, and is inserted  
into the foreparts of the *Arytenoides*; it  
contracts the *Rimula*.

*Arytenoides.* The Fifth Muscle is the *Arytenoides*; it runneth upon the upper part of the Cartilage *Arytenoides*, and, with its fellow, forms a Sphincter for contracting of the *Rimula*.

A true Squinzie, which is caused by the Inflammation of these Muscles, is Mortal; because they shut exactly the chink of the *Larynx*; therefore *Bronchotomy* is absolutely necessary in this case, but it is rarely, though it may be safely used.

*Of the Vessels of the Larynx.* The *Larynx* receives Veins from the *Jugulars*, Arteries from the *Carotides*, and Nerves from the *Recurrent*.

*Of the Glandulae Thyroideæ.* On the lower part of the *Larynx*, upon the sides of the Annulary Cartilage, and of the first ring of the *Trachea*, there are two Lymphatick Glands call'd *Thyroideæ*; they are big and spongyous, of the figure of a Pear, their Colour is red; their Substance solid and viscous; they have Veins, Nerves and Arteries as the *Larynx*.

The Use of the *Larynx* is not only to form the Voice, but also, by the different Apertures of its *Rimula*, the Lungs are more or less compress'd by the Air; for if the Aperture of the *Larynx* had been as wide as the *Aspera Arteria*, the Lungs could have suffer'd little or no compression.

## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Upper Cavity, or Head.*

## S E C T. I.

*Of the Frontal and Occipital Muscles; and of the Pericranium.*

**T**H E Head is situated in the upper part of the Body, not only for the conveniency of the Senses, but also that the Brain may the more easily send the Animal Spirits to all the Parts of the Body.

Its Natural Figure is round, but a little flat upon its Sides; round, that it might contain the greater quantity of Brains; and flat upon its sides, that the bounds of the Sight may be the larger, or rather, that the Ears might not be too much exposed to danger.

We have divided the External Parts of the Head into two, the Face and the hairy Scalp; we shall now divide it into the *Containing* and the *Contained* Parts. The *Containing* Parts are the Skin with the Hair upon it; the Pericranium, the Skull, and the two Meninges. Of the Skin and Hair we have already spoken;

spoken ; of the Skull we shall speak in its proper place.

Anatomists do generally say, that the Skull is cover'd both with a *Pericranium* and a *Periosteum* ; but they have taken the *Aponeurosis* of the *Occipital* and *Frontal* Muscles for one of them. These Muscles lie immediately under the Skin. The first two are called *Frontales*. Their fleshy Fibres are inserted into the Eye-brows ; from thence they go straight up the *Os Frontis*, and are continued by a long and large *Aponeurosis* to that of the *Occipitales* ; they adhere closely to the Skin of the Forehead, which they pull upwards. The other two Muscles, which are call'd *Occipitales*, have their fleshy Fibres fixed to the Skin of the Hind-head, which they also pull upwards : They are short, broad, and thin, and they end in a large *Aponeurosis*, which joins that of the *Frontals*, and both together cover the whole Skull.

Of the Peri-  
cranium.

Therefore the *Periosteum* or *Pericranium* is a very thin and nervous Membrane, of an Exquisite Sense, which covers immediately not only the *Cranium*, but all the Bones of the Body, except the Teeth, and Bones of the Ear. It is tied to the *Dura Mater* by some Fibres which pass through the Sutures of the skull. It receives Veins from

from the External Jugulars, Arteries from the *Carotides*, Nerves from the Fifth Pair of the Brain, and from the Second of the Neck.

## S E C T. II.

*Of the Dura and Pia Mater.*

THE Membranes or *Meninges*, which are within the *Cranium*, are two, the *Dura Mater*, and the *Pia Mater*; so call'd, because they are suppos'd to be the Origination of all the Membranes of the Body.

The *Dura Mater* is a strong and thick Membrane which covers all the Cavity of the *Cranium*; it contains the whole Brain somewhat loosely, that the Vessels which run between its Duplication, and upon the Surface of the Brain, be not too much press'd by the *Cranium*; it sticks very close to the Basis of the *Cranium*, and to its Sutures, by the Fibres and Vessels it sends to the *Pericranium*; it is fasten'd to the *Pia Mater*, and to the Brain, by the Vessels which pass from the one to the other. It gives a Coat or Covering to all the Nerves which rise from the Brain to the *Spinalis Medulla*, and to all the Nerves which rise from it. Its Surface is rough towards the *Cranium*, but smooth

smooth towards the Brain. It is a double Membrane woven of strong Fibres, which may be plainly seen on its inside, but very hardly on its outside next the *Cranium*.

Of its Pro-  
cesses.

The *Dura Mater* hath three Processes made by the doubling of its inner Membrane. The First rises by a narrow beginning from the *Crista Galli*, to which it is fastened, and as it approaches the hind-part of the Head it grows broader and broader, till it terminates where the *Longitudinal Sinus* ends. It divides the *Cerebrum* into two Hemispheres near as deep as the *Corpus Callosum*. It resembles a Sickle, therefore it is call'd *Falx*. The Second separates the *Cerebrum* from the *Cerebellum* down to the *Medulla Oblongata*, that the weight of the *Cerebrum* may not offend the *Cerebellum* which lies under it; this Process is very strong and thick, and in ravenous Beasts 'tis for the most part bony, because of the violent motion of their Brain. The Third is the smallest; it separates the External Substance of the hinder-part of the *Cerebellum* into two Protuberances; and upon it Monsieur *Du Verney's Fifth Sinus* runs.

Of the Sinus's  
of the Dura  
Mater.

In the *Dura Mater* there are several Sinus's or Channels, which run between its External and Internal Membrane; of these there are four principal

cipal ones, which are commonly described.

The First is the *Sinus Longitudinalis*, First, Of the Longitudinalis. it rises from the blind hole in the upper part of the *Crista Galli*; it runs along the upper part of the *Falx*, and ends where it ends; it lies exactly under the *Sutura Sagittalis*. Into this *Sinus* the Veins of the Brain, and some of the proper Veins of the *Dura Mater*, bring back the Blood which they receive from the Arteries. Of these Veins, some running obliquely from the forepart of the Brain backwards, and others contrary, from the hind-part forward, creep a little space between the Duplicature of the Membrane, as the Ureters do upon the Bladder, and so they open in the *Sinus*. In this *Sinus* there are several small Cells and round Ligaments, which go from one side of the Cavity to the other. These, by their Elasticity, further the Motion of the Blood.

The Second and Third *Sinus's*, which Laterales. this *Sinus* pours into, are the *Laterales*; they rise from the end of the first, into which they open, and going down upon the sides of the Occipital Bone, in a crooked way, they pass through the same hole with the Eighth Pair of Nerves, and discharge themselves into the internal Jugulars. Into these *Sinus's* some Veins and the other *Sinus's* discharge themselves.

The

## Of the Dura and Pia Mater.

Of the Fourth Sinus.

The Fourth *Sinus* runs by the broad Extremity of the *Falx*, and opens where the Lateral *Sinus*'s join the Longitudinal. This meeting of the four *Sinus*'s is call'd *Torcular*. It receives the Blood at its other Extremity from the *Plexus Choroides*.

Of the Sinus Superiores.

Besides these, there are Six more, which have been describ'd by several Anatomists. The first two are call'd *Superiores*, they rise from the binder Processes of the *Sella Turcica*, or from the Circular *Sinus*'s of Dr. Ridley, and run along the upper part of the Internal Processes of the *Os Petrosum*; then descending, they open into the *Laterales*.

Of the Interniores.

There are two more call'd *Inferiores*; they rise from the same place with the other two, and running upon the Union of the *Os Petrosum* with the Occipital, they open into the *Laterales*, just as they are going out of the Skull.

A Fifth Sinus.

There is a Fifth, which the curious Mons. *Du Verney* demonstrates; it runs upon the third Process of the *Dura Mater*, and divides into two branches, of which one opens into the *Laterales*, and the other into the *Sinus Vertebralis*.

Of the Circular Sinus.

That exact Anatomist Doctor *Ridley*, in his *Treatise of the Brain*, gives account of a Sixth, which he calls the *Circular Sinus*, because it surrounds the

the *Glandula Pituitaria*; it communicates with the two *Superiores* and *Inferiores*.

Vesalius hath remark'd a *Sinus* which runs along the bottom of the *Falx*, and which opens into the Fourth *Sinus*; this is call'd, by Mons. *Du Verney*, *Longitudinalis Inferior*. There are two more situated at the second Proces of the *Dura Mater*, one on each side; they are about an Inch wide from the *Laterales*, into which they open; but these three do not always appear.

The Use of these *Sinus's* is to receive <sup>The Use of the</sup> *Sinus's* Blood of the adjacent Parts from the Veins, to which they are as so many Trunks which discharge the Blood into the Internal Jugulars.

The Vessels of the *Dura Mater* are, first, a Branch from the *Carotidal*, whilst it is in its long Canal, which is dispersed in the fore and lower part of the *Dura Mater*. Secondly, An Artery which enters the hole of the *Cranium*, call'd *Foramen Arteria Dura Matris*; it is dispersed on the sides of this Membrane, and runs as high as the *Sinus Longitudinalis*. The Vein which accompanies the Branches of this Artery goes out of the Skull by the *Foramen Lacerum*. Thirdly, a Branch of the *Vertebral Artery* and Vein which passes through that Hole where the Lateral *Sinus's*

*Sinus's* join the Jugulars; they are dispers'd in the hind part of the *Dura Mater*.

The Blood which is brought by the Arteries, is carry'd back by the Veins which go out at the same holes by which the Arteries enter: but in case the swelling of the Arteries, by a Preternatural Fermentation of the Blood, should compress the Veins as they go out of the Skull; which might easily happen, being it has more Arteries than Veins; therefore there are several other Veins, which inosculate with the Arteries, and which carry the Blood from them into two small Veins, which are on the sides of the Longitudinal *Sinus's*; 'tis these Veins which open into this *Sinus*, that the Blood which was stopt the other way, may have a free Circulation this way, as has been ingeniously observed by Dr. Ridley.

It hath also Nerves from the first Branch of the Fifth Pair, which give it an Exquisite Sense. It has a motion of *Systole* and *Diastole*, which is caused by the Arteries which enter the Skull. No doubt, the great number of Arteries in the Brain, contribute more to it, than those few proper to it self, which may assist a little, though not very sensibly, because of their smallness and paucity. The Use of the *Dura Mater*, is to contain and cover the Brain, the Spinal Marrow,

Marrow, and all the Nerves, to divide the *Cerebrum* in two, and to hinder it from pressing the *Cerebellum*.

The *Pia Mater* is a thin and delicate double Membrane which lies under the *Dura Mater*.

*Dura Mater*, and covers immediately the Substance of the Brain. Its inner Membrane is much larger than its outer Membrane, for it runs in betwixt all the Foldings and Circumvolutions of the Brain, to separate them, and to sustain the Blood-Vessels, which make several turnings and windings upon it, before they terminate in the Substance of the Brain. It has the same Use as the *Dura Mater*.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Cerebrum and Cerebellum.*

THE whole Substance of the Brain is divided into two parts ; that which lies mostly in the forepart of the Skull is properly call'd the *Cerebrum* ; and that which lies in the back part, under the hind-part of the *Cerebrum* (which is supported by the second Process of the *Dura Mater*) is call'd the *Cerebellum*. Both the one and the other are contained in the *Meninges* and in the *Cranium*, as in a case of Bones, that nothing may hurt their Substance, which is soft.

The

## Of the Cerebrum, &amp;c.

Of the Figure  
and Substance  
of the Cere-  
brum.

The Cerebrum is of a round Figure ; it is divided by the first Process of the *Dura Mater* into the right and left side. Its External Surface resembles the turnings and windings of the Intestines. In the Cerebrum we distinguish two different Substances, the External, which is of an Ashy colour, and the Internal, which is of a White colour. Its External Substance is call'd *Substantia Corticalis*, or *Cineritia* ; it is soft, glandulous, and of the colour of Ashes. Its Internal, call'd *Substantia Medullaris*, is firmer, white, and fibrous ; of it the Nerves are made, and it reaches to the Extremity of the *Medulla Spinalis*, where it divides into Fibres.

The External Substance of the Brain, by its Circumvolutions, resembles the Small Guts ; and in the middle of each Circumvolution is the beginning of the Medullary Substance : so that the Cortical Substance is always on the External side : And the Inner *Lamina* of the *Pia Mater* is co-extended with the Cortical Substance, which it immediately covers every where.

*Malpighius*, who has examin'd this Cortical Substance, says, that it is nothing but a heap of little Oval Glands, which receive the Capillary branches of the Veins and Arteries which belong to the Brain, and which send out an infinite

nite number of Fibres, which all together make up the Medullary Substance, which going out of the *Craniū*, forms the Nerves and *Medulla Spinalis* contained in the *Vertebra*.

The Internal Substance of the right and left side of the Brain coming to join one another, leave a space between them which forms the three Ventrices, or *Centrum Ovale*; the Upper part or Covering of this space, is call'd the *Corpus Callosum*; the bottom of this space is the Internal Substance of the two sides of the *Cerebrum*, gathered together, as it were, in two bundles, which are call'd *Crura Medulla Oblongata*, upon them are the Protuberances call'd the *Corpora Striata*, and the *Thalami Nervorum Opticorum*. These *Crura* uniting, make one Body call'd the *Medulla Oblongata*, upon which there are four Prominences call'd *Nates* and *Testes*: And behind these Prominences, the Internal or Medullary Substance of the *Cerebellum* being also divided into two bundles, forms upon each side of the *Medulla Oblongata* three more Protuberances, and then it passes out of the *Craniū* into the *Vertebra*, where it gets the name of *Medulla Spinalis*. This is a general Idea of the Structure of the Brain, for the better understanding its Parts: Which

*A general Idea of the Structure of the Brain.*

Which we shall now describe in particular.

Below the depth of all the Circumvolutions of the Brain, the first thing that appears immediately under the first Process of the *Dura Mater* is the *Corpus Callosum*, or the Covering of the two Lateral Ventrices, formed by the Union of the Medullary Fibres of each side.

*Of the two Ventrices.*

This being laid aside, the two Lateral Ventrices appear, they reach from the forepart of the *Cerebrum* backwards; they are pretty broad in their hind-part, but they grow narrower towards their fore-part. They are divided into the Right and Left Ventricle by a thin transparent Membrane, which comes from the under side of the *Corpus Callosum*, and is extended to the *Fornix*, which is in the bottom of the Ventrices; this Membrane is call'd *Septum Lucidum*. I am apt to think it is a Production of the *Pia Mater*, which covers all the sides of the Ventrices.

*Of the Corpus Striata.* In these two Ventrices there are four Prominences, two in each Ventricle. The foremost two are call'd *Corpora Striata*, which are the tips of the *Crura Medullæ Oblongatæ*. They are oblong, and their Extremities come down upon the sides of the two other Prominences; they are of a cineritious colour without, but in their internal

Sub-

Sub-  
whi-  
mix-  
dul-  
geth-  
(by-  
Ner-  
T-  
Tha-  
the-  
they-  
ciner-  
Fig-  
of-  
twee-  
whic-  
Lim-  
Upon-  
roide-  
little-  
says-  
it.  
teral-  
der-  
tricle-  
Sinus-  
In-  
ata-  
thin-  
dulla-  
the-  
Root-  
wher-

Substance there are many white streaks, which are the Medullary Substance mixed with the cineritious or glandulous. They are, as it were, tied together by a Medullary Process, call'd, (by *Vicusius*) *Commissura Crassioris Nervi Amula*.

The two other Prominences are call'd *of the Thal. Nerv. Optic.*

*Thalami Nervorum Opticorum*, because the Optick Nerves rise out of them; they are Medullary without, but a little cineritious within; they are of an oblong Figure; they are upon the upper part of the *Crura Medulla Oblongata*: between them there is a Medullary Tract, which encompasses them, call'd (by *Willis*) *Limbi Postiores Corporum Striaturum*. Upon them also lies the *Plexus Choroides*, made of Veins, Arteries, and little Glands. The learned Dr. *Ridley* says, he has seen Lymphaticks rise from it. This *Plexus* reaches from one Lateral Ventricle to the other, passing under the *Fornix*, above the third Ventricle. It sends a Branch to the fourth Sinus of the *Dura Mater*.

In the middle, above the *Corpora Striata* and the *Th. Nerv. Opt.* there lies a thin and broad Production of the Medullary Substance, which comes from the fore-part of the Ventracles by two Roots, and reaches to the hinder-part, where it ends by two other Protuberances

rances call'd its *Crura*, which cover a great part of the *Thal. Nerv. Optic.* This Production is call'd the *Fornix*, because it is a Covering to the third Ventricle.

*Of the third Ventricle.*

*Of the Infundibulum.*

*Of the Glandula Pituitaria.*

*Of the Rete Mirabile.*

Under the *Fornix* there is a *Rima* between the *Crura Medulla Oblongata*, which is the third Ventricle, it being a little dilated in its fore-part: There is a Hole that goes down to the *Glandula Pituitaria*; this Hole is the entry to the *Infundibulum* or Funnel, so call'd because of its Figure. It is a small Conduit made of the Medullary Substance, covered with the *Pia Mater*; it pierces the *Dura Mater* upon the basis of the Skull, and sinks into the Substance of

The *Glandula Pituitaria*, which is situated in the *Sella Turcica*, closely cover'd with the *Pia* and *Dura Mater*; it is of a harder Substance than the other Glands of the Body; it receives the end of the *Infundibulum*, which carries a Liquor from the Ventriles into this Gland, which is surrounded by the *Rete Mirabile*, or a *Plexus* of some Branches of the *Carotidale* and *Cervical* Arteries, which break the *impetus* of the Blood, and abate the Velocity, as it passes through the tender Substance of the Brain.

But

But to return to the third Ventricle. *Of the Anus.*  
In its hinder part there is another small Hole called *Anus*, which leads into the fourth Ventricle in the *Cerebellum*. In the upper part of this Hole is situated the *Glandula Pinealis*, (*Des Cartes*'s pretended Seat of the Soul) about the bigness of a Pease; it is composed of the same Substance with the rest of the Brain, and for the same Use. It is tied by some Fibres to the

Glandula Pi-  
nealis.

*Nates*, which are two Prominences of the *Medulla Oblongata*, situated above the fore-part of that Conduit, which leads from the *Anus* to the fourth Ventricle; they are of an Oval figure, pretty big, and immediately behind them are two other Prominences of the same figure and substance, call'd *Testes*, both cover'd with a Net of Blood-Vessels. There is a small transverse Medullary Protuberance behind the *Testes*, from which the Pathetick Nerves rise.

*Testes.*

The Conduit which reaches from the *Anus* to the fourth Ventricle, is in that part of the *Medulla Oblongata*, which is betwixt the *Cerebrum* and the *Cerebellum*, call'd the *Isthmus*. The upper part or Cover of this Conduit, which is betwixt the *Testes* and the foremost Vermicular Process of the *Cerebellum*, to which two it is tied at its two ends, and to the Processes that come from the

*Isthmus.*

Valvula Ma-  
jor.

*Cerebellum* to the *Testes*, at its sides, is call'd *Valvula Major*: 'Tis of a Medullary Substance; its Use is to keep the *Lympba* from falling out above the Nerves in the basis of the Skull. These are all the Parts belonging to the *Cerebrum*.

Cerebellum.

Now the *Cerebellum*, which is much less, is also composed of a Cortical and Medullary Substance; its Superficies makes not turnings and windings as that of the *Cerebrum*; but its foldings are straight, and they resemble the Segments of Circles, or the edges of Plates laid on one another; and these Segments are largest in its middle, and they grow less as they approach its fore and hind-part, where they seem to resemble two Worms, therefore call'd *Processus Vermiformes*.

Processus  
Vermifor-  
mes.

The Medullary Substance of the *Cerebellum*, as it approaches the *Medulla Oblongata*, gathers together, and then divides equally into two bundles, which are joined to the two sides of the *Medulla Oblongata*: As they separate, they leave a little space upon the upper side of the *Medulla*, which is call'd the *Fourth Ventricle*; and its further end, because of its resemblance, *Calamus Scriptorius*. The top of this Ventricle is covered with several Blood-Vessels woven like a Net.

Of the Fourth  
Ventricle.

The

The Medullary Substance of the *Cerebellum* makes three Processses upon each side of the *Medulla Oblongata*. The first two go on each side of it to the *Testes*; the *Valvula Major* is betwixt them. The second two are pretty broad; they go straight down on each side, and meet on the under side of the *Medulla*; they make that Protuberance call'd *Processus Annularis*; and the third goes backwards upon the upper sides of the *Medulla*; they make it look bigger, being like two Cords upon its sides.

This is all that is remarkable in the *Cerebrum*, *Cerebellum*, and upper side of the *Medulla Oblongata*. But if you turn over the Brain, you may see distinctly the rise of all the Nerves, the *Infundibulum*, two white Spots behind it, the *Crura Medulla Oblongatae*, one on each side of the *Cerebrum*. Where they join, you may see the *Processus Annularis*, or *Pons Varolij*: And beyond that, there are two Prominences call'd *Corpora Pyramidalia*; they are about an Inch long; and on each side of them, towards their lower end, there are two more, which, because of their figure, are call'd *Corpora Olivaria*; and then the *Medulla Oblongata* goes out of the Skull, being contained in the *Pia* and *Dura Mater*.

Observe, That the *Medulla Oblongata*, with all the Protuberances which are upon its upper and lower sides, are not purely of the Medullary Substance, but internally they are mix'd with the Cortical; and it is this mixture which makes that they call *Striae*, to which they have given different imaginary Uses, according to their different Positions.

Now the Vessels of the Brain are Nerves, Veins and Arteries. The Nerves are Ten Pair. The First Pair are the Olfactory Nerves; they rise from the basis of the *Corpora Striata*, and pass through the Holes of the *Os Cribroforme*. The Second Pair are the Optick Nerves; they rise partly from the Extremities of the *Corpora Striata*, and partly from the *Thalami Nervorum Opticorum*, which they almost embrace; they unite together above the *Cella Turcica*, and immediately dividing again, they pass through the two foremost Holes in the *Os Sphænoïdes*. The Third Pair are Movers of the Eyes; they rise on each side of the *Infundibulum* from the *Medulla Oblongata*, and go out at the *Foramina Lacera*. The Fourth Pair are the Pathetick Nerves; they rise from the small Medullary Cord which is behind the *Testes*, and pass through the *Foramina Lacera*. The Fifth Pair rise from the fore-part of the *Processus Annularis*; they give Nerves

Nerves to the *Dura Mater*; each of them divides into three branches, the first passes out at the *Foramen Lacerum*, the second at the third Hole of the *Os Sphænoïdes*, and the third through another Hole of the same Bone. The Sixth Pair rises from the sides of the *Processus Annularis*, and goes out at the *Foramen Lacerum*; but just before it goes out, it casts back a Branch which makes the Root of the Intercostal Nerve; this goes out at the Canal through which the Carotidale Artery enters. The Seventh is the Auditory Nerve; it rises from the hind-part of the *Processus Annularis*, and enters the Hole in the Procles of the *Os Petrosum*. The Eighth Pair is the *Par Vagum*, it rises from the *Medulla Oblongata* behind the *Processus Annularis*, by several Threads which join in one, and it goes out at the same hole the *Lateral Sinus's* open into the *Jugulares*. The Ninth Pair rises from the *Processus Olivares* of the *Medulla Oblongata*, and passes out at a hole in the *Occipital Bone*, which is proper to its self. The Tenth and last Pair rises by several Fibres from the beginning of the *Medulla Spinalis*; from thence ascending within the *Occiput*, it turns, and passes out at the same hole through which the *Vertebral Artery* enters, between the *First Vertebra* and the *Occi-*

pital Bone, running through a *Sinus* in this *Vertebra*. These are the Nerves of the Brain, which we shall trace further in the *Eighth Chapter*.

*Of the Vessels  
of the Brain.*

The Arteries are the two Internal Carotids which pass through two oblique Canals in the *Offa Petrosa* : As soon as they enter the Skull, they give a branch which enters the Orbit of the Eye ; they give branches which make the *Rete Mirabile*, then they pierce the *Dura Mater* on each side of the *Infundibulum* ; they communicate with the Cervical Artery, and they give Branches to the *Plexus Choroides*, and are distributed through all the Substance of the Brain : Their Branches make many turnings and windings upon the *Pia Mater*, and at last are lost in the little Glands of the Cortical Substance of the Brain.

The two Vertebral Arteries which come out of the holes in the transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae*, enter the large hole of the Occipital Bone ; they pierce the *Dura Mater*, and go along the under side of the *Medulla Oblongata* ; then they cast back two Branches for the Spinal Arteries, and at the *Processus Annularis* they join in one branch call'd the *Cervical Artery*. This communicates with the two *Carotides*, by two Branches call'd the *Communicant Branches* ;

Branches ; then it divides again into two, which give Branches to the *Rete Mirabile*, *Plexus Choroides*, and they are afterwards distributed through all the Substance of the Brain, ending in the Cineritious Substance, as the *Carotidales*.

The Veins enter not the *Cranium* at the same holes that the Arteries do, because, as Dr. *Ridley* rightly observes, upon any Fermentation of the Blood, the Swelling and Pulse of the Arteries would compress the Veins against the bony sides of their Passage, and so cause a Stagnation and Extravasation of the Blood in the Brain, which would be the destruction of the whole Machine. Neither do the Veins run along by the sides of the Arteries in the Brain, as they do through all the rest of the Body, but they rise from the Extremities of the Arteries, in the Cineritious Substance of the Brain, and go straight to discharge themselves into the *Sinus's* of the *Dura Mater*.

The Blood which is brought into the Brain by the Carotidal and Vertebral Arteries, is separated by the Glands, which make the Cineritious and Cortical Substance of the Brain, from its finest and most subtile Parts, call'd Animal Spirits, which are received from the Glands by the Fibres of the Medul-

lary Substance, which is the beginning of the Nerves. Each Nerve therefore is a bundle of very fine and small Tubes, of which some are no bigger than  $\frac{1}{100}$  part of an Hair ; and these Tubes are the Excretory Ducts of the Cineritious or Glandulous part of the Brain. This does not only appear from the Structure of the Brain, but by reason likewise we are assured that there is such a Fluid as we call Animal Spirits running in the Nerves. For seeing all Sensation is performed by the Nerves, it must be done either by the Substance of the Nerve, or the Fluid which is contained in the Nerve : If by the Substance of the Nerve, it must be by a Vibration from the Part upon which the impression is made to the Brain. Now that there can be no Vibration from the impression of external Objects upon Animal Nerves, which are slack, and surrounded all along by other bodies, is evident ; and therefore Sensation must be performed by the Fluid in the Nerves.

The Motion of this Fluid is not swift and rapid, as is generally supposed, but slow and languid, seeing all its motion proceeds from the dilatation of the Arteries compressing the soft Substance of the Nerves, and from the force by which it is thrust through the Glands of the Brain. And when the Nerves are full of

of this fine Fluid, the impressions of Objects may be communicated to the Brain without any quick motion in the Animal Spirits, either by retarding or stopping their progressive Motion, or by causing an Undulation. If to these we add, that the Animal Spirits must be confined within their own proper Channels, as well as the other Fluids of the Body ; we shall easily perceive how precarious the many ingenious Hypotheses are, which the Learned *Willis* has elegantly describ'd in his *System of the Nerves, and Nervous Distempers.*

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Eyes.*

THE Organs of Sight are divided into two Parts : The Internal Part, which is the Globe or Body of the Eye ; and the External Part, which is those Parts about the Globe subservient to the Globe.

The first of these last are the Eye-<sup>Of the Eye.</sup> brows, which are nothing but some <sup>brows.</sup> Hairs bunching out above the Eye, by some Fat which is under the Skin in this place. They break the Rays of Light, that they be not directly darted into the Eyes, which would greatly offend the

Sight, as they do when we look directly upon the Sun.

*The Eye-lids.* The next are the Eye-lids, two to each Eye. The Upper Lid moves very quickly, the Under very undiscernibly.

*Its Muscles.* The Upper Eye-lid is lifted up by the *Musculus Rectus*, which rises from the bottom of the Orbit of the Eye, where the Optick Nerves pierce the *Cranium*, and passing above the *Musculus Superbus*, 'tis inserted by a large Tendon to the border of the Eye-lid.

Both Lids are brought together to shut upon the Eye by another Muscle call'd *Orbicularis*. It rises from the great Angle of the Eye, and its Fibres are spread two fingers breadth, covering the Under Lid; they reach to the Little *Canthus*, from which continuing its Circular Fibres which cover the Upper Lid, it is inserted into the same place from which it arose. Some Authors divide this Muscle into two, the Superior and Inferior, which they make to rise from the great *Canthus*, and to be inserted into the little *Canthus*.

*Of the Conjunctiva.* The Eye-lids are covered within with a smooth Membrane call'd *Conjunctiva*, because it is continued upon the fore-part of the Globe, constituting that which we call the White of the Eye; it joins the Globe to the edges of the Orbit.

The

The Edges of the Eye-lids have two *of the Cilia*, small and soft Cartilages, like the Segments of a Circle, call'd *Cilia*; they keep the Eye-lids extended, that every Part may be equally raised. Upon them there is a rank of small Glands, whose Excretory Chanels open upon the Edges of the Lids. They yield a Wax which fasteneth the Eye-lids together whilst we sleep. They are cover'd with the Skin externally, and with the *Conjunctiva* internally. Upon the Edges of the Lids there are also some Hairs in form of a Pallisado, to preserve the Eyes, as the Eye-brows do, and to hinder any Filth or Flyes from falling into the Eyes.

In the backside of the *Conjunctiva*, *of the Glandula Lachrymalis*, upon the upper part of the Globe, is *of the Glandula Lachrymalis*, pretty large, divided into several Lobes, each of which sends out an Excretory Chanel which opens in the foreside of this Membrane, where it covers the Upper Lid. This Gland separates the Matter of the Tears, which, by the continual motion of this Lid, moisten the *Cornea*, which otherwise would dry and wrinkle by the continual action of the external Air.

The Edges of the Eye-lids being of an equal convexity with the Ball of the Eye, which they touch, as the Tears fall from off the *Cornea*, they are stopt by the Edge of the Under Eye-lid, along which

Puncta La-  
chrymalia.

which they run, till they fall into two small holes in the great *Canthus* of the Eye, one in each Eye-lid. These Holes are call'd *Puncta Lachrymalia*, they lead to a small membranous Bag, which is situated in this corner, upon the *Os Lachrymale*; from the bottom of which there goes a small Pipe, which pierces this Bone into the Nose, and opens under the upper *Lamina* of the *Os Spongiosum*. It moistens the inner Membrane of the Nostrils, by the humour of the Lachrymal Gland, which runs from off the Globe into them. Sometimes the acrimony of this Humour causeth Sneezing, which we hinder, by pressing the Angle of the Eye, and so stop its running.

Between these two *Puncta* there is a Caruncle which serves to keep them open when the Eyes are shut: This Caruncle was thought to be the *Glandula Lachrymalis*.

of the Muscles  
of the Eye.

The Globe of the Eye is moved by four straight Muscles, and two oblique; and betwixt them there is a great deal of Fat, which facilitates the motion of the Globe.

The first of the four straight Muscles is call'd *Attollens*, or *Superbus*; it lies upon the upper part of the Globe; it pulleth up the Eye when we look up. The second is call'd *Deprimens*, or *Humilis*;

*milis*; it pulleth down the Eye. The third is call'd *Adductor*, it draweth the Eye towards the Nose. The fourth *Abductor*, it draweth the Eye towards the little *Canthus*. They rise all four from the Circumference of the Hole in the Orbit, through which the Optick Nerves pass, and they terminate about the *Cornea* by four pretty large Tendons. When they all act together, they draw the Eye towards the bottom of the Orbit. When the *Superbus* and the *Adductor*, or the *Abductor*, act together, or the *Humilis* and the *Adductor* or *Abductor* act together, they perform the Oblique Motions, which have been attributed to the Oblique Muscles.

The first of the Oblique Muscles, which is the fifth of the Eye, is the *Obliquus Minor*; it rises from the lower side of the Orbit near its External Circumference, where the first and second Bones of the Upper Jaw join together, and ascending obliquely by the outer Corner of the Eye, 'tis inserted to the upper and external side of the Globe, behind the Tendon of the *Abductor*.

The second of the Oblique Muscles, and the sixth of the Eye, is the *Obliquus Major*; it rises from the bottom of the Orbit, and marching obliquely towards the great *Canthus*, in the upper part of which, near the brink, there is a Cartilaginous

ginous Ring, through which it passes its round Tendon ; from whence reverting backwards, it's inserted into the upper part of the Globe, behind the Tendon of the *Attollens*.

The Use of the first of these Muscles is to draw the Globe of the Eye forwards, and to turn its Pupil upwards ; and of the second, to draw it forwards, and to turn its Pupil downwards, for the better receiving of the Rays of Light, which could not be performed by any of the other four Muscles, (as Mr. Cooper has very well observed.) And both of them are an Axis for suspending the Globe ; by which, in its almost continual motion, 'tis moved the more easily, (as has been ingeniously observ'd by Mons. *de la Hire*.)

Now the Globe of the Eye is of a Spherical figure ; in it are contained the principal Instruments of Vision ; 'tis composed of Coats and Humours.

*Of the Con-junctiva.*

The first Coat is the *Conjunctiva* ; it makes the White of the Eye ; it hath been already described : It is full of small Veins and Arteries, which appear big in an *Ophthalmia* or Inflammation of the Eyes.

*Sclerotica.*

The second is call'd *Sclerotica* ; 'tis thick, hard, and smooth, opaque behind, but transparent before, where it makes the

Third

Third Coat call'd *Cornea*, because it is transparent, like the Horn of a Lantern, in the forepart of the Eye, which is surrounded by the White of the Eye: It has a greater Convexity than the rest of the Globe of the Eye, and is compos'd of several parallel *Laminae*, which are nourished by many Blood-Vessels, so fine, as not to hinder even the smallest Rays of Light from entring the Eye; and it has a most Exquisite Sense, that, upon the least Pain, the Tears might be squeez'd out of the Lachrymal Gland, to wash off any filth which, by sticking to the *Cornea*, might render it opake.

The fourth is the *Choroides*; it lies *Choroides* under the *Sclerotica*; 'tis much thinner than it: It hath a great number of Blood-Vessels which come from the second, and which are spread upon it; as also several Glands, which separate from the Blood-Vessels a black Liquor which tinctures all this Membrane internally, which is otherwise of a whitish colour. This Coat is open, or has a hole before, for the passage of the Rays of Light, call'd *Pupilla*. That part of this Coat which makes the Circumference of this Hole, and which lies upon the sides of the Chrystalline Humour, is

The fifth Coat call'd *Uvea*, which is *Uvea* made of circular and straight Fibres; it

it contracts and dilates according to the different impressions of Light and of Objects.

Iris.

The Iris is the outside of the Uvea, where the different Colours appear. On the inside of the Uvea, from its Circumference, which joins the Choroides, rises the *Ligamentum Ciliare*. It is made of short Fibres which run upon the forepart of the Glassy Humour to the edges of the Chrystalline, like Lines drawn from the Circumference to the Centre. By the contraction of these Fibres the forepart of the Eye is made more prominent, and the *Retina* pressed further back from the Chrystalline Humour, or the *Axis of Vision* is lengthened when Objects are placed too near the Eye.

Retina.

The sixth is the *Retina*, so call'd, becaule it resembles a Net, which covereth the bottom of the Cavity of the Eye: It is a fine expansion of the Medullary Fibres of the Optick Nerve upon the surface of the glassy Humour, as far as the *Ligamenta Ciliaria*: 'Tis on this Coat that the impressions of Objects are made.

Of the Aqueous Humour.

The Humours of the Eye are three: The first is call'd the *Aqueous*; it lies in the forepart of the Globe, immediately under the *Cornea*; this Humour is thin and liquid, of a spirituous Nature, for it will not freeze in the greatest Frost.

This

This evinces the necessity of a continual supply for this Humour, which, in effect, it hath : For if the *Cornea* be prick'd, and this Humour squeez'd out, it shall be restor'd again in the space of ten or twelve Hours.

The second Humour is the Chryſtalline *Humour* ; it lies immediately next to the *Aqueous*, behind the *Uvea*, opposite to the *Pupilla*, nearer to the forepart than the backpart of the Globe ; it is the least of the Humours, but much more solid than any of them : Its Figure, which is Convex on both sides, resembles two unequal Segments of Spheres, of which the most Convex is its backſide, which makes a small Cavity in the Glafly Humour in which it lies. : It is cover'd with a fine Coat call'd *Aranea*.

The third is the Glafly Humour ; it *of the Vitrious Humour.* hath a great reſemblance to the White of an Egg ; it filleth all the hind-part of the Cavity of the Globe. It is in a greater abundance than the other two. It is thicker than the Aqueous, but thinner than the Chryſtalline Humour. It is contained in a very fine Coat of the same Name. It gives the Spherical Figure to the Eye. Upon its back-part the *Retina* is spread, which it holdeth from the Chryſtalline Humour at a distance requisite to receive the impression of Objects distinctly.

The

The Optick Nerves pierce the Globe of the Eye a little on the inside of the Optick Axes. Their External Coat, which is a production of the *Dura Mater*, is continued to the *Sclerotis*, as their Internal from the *Pia Mater* is to the *Choroïdes*; and their Medullary Fibres passing through all, are expanded into the *Retina*, upon which the Images of Objects are painted. The Centre of this Expansion is insensible, and all Rays which fall upon it are lost, and consequently, that point of the Object from which these Rays come is invisible to that Eye, as is evident from that famed Experiment of Monsieur *Mariotes*. The reason of this Insensibility proceeds probably from the Blood-Vessels which enter with the Optick Nerve, and cover this part of the *Retina*. But whatsoever its Cause is, we are extremely obliged to the Maker of our Eyes, that the Optick Nerves are inserted on the inside of the Optick Axes; for if they had pierced the Globe of the Eye in the Optick Axes, then the middle point of every Object had been invisible; and where all things conduce to make us see best, there we had not seen at all. We must likewise have lost some part of an Object, if the Optick Nerves had been placed on the Outside of the Optick Axes: because an Object

Object may be so placed, as that all the Rays which come from one point may fall upon the outside of both Eyes; but it is impossible that they should fall upon the Inside of both Eyes, and therefore that point which is lost in one Eye, is visible by the other.

The Vessels of the Eyes are Branches *of the Vessels of the Eyes.* of the External Carotides and Jugulars which are distributed upon the External Parts of the Eyes, and a Vein which opens into the Superior Sinus of the *Dura Mater*, in the basis of the Skull, and an Artery from the Internal Carotidale. They accompany the Optick Nerves, and are distributed on the Muscles and Globe of the Eye.

There are also some Lymphaticks which accompany the Blood-Vessels. The Nerves of the Eyes are

The Optick Nerves; they are pretty *of their Nerves.* big and round. The third Pair, of the Brain, call'd *Motorij*; The fourth Pair, call'd *Pathetici*; The first branch of the fifth Pair, call'd *Ophthalmicus*; and the sixth Pair; are all bestowed upon the Muscles of the Eyes.

All the Rays which come from one *of Vision.* point of an Object, are, by the *Cornea* and Humours of the Eye, united in a point of the *Retina*, which is in a straight Line, drawn from the same Point of the Object, through the Centre of

of the Eye ; and consequently all the Rays, which come from all the Points of an Object, are united on the *Retina*, in the same order and proportion as the Points of the Object are from whence these Rays come. Therefore the impression which these Rays make upon the *Retina*, must be the Image of the Object.

Thus, in General, Vision is performed. But now let us see what the several Parts of the Globe conduce in this Action. We have said, that the *Cornea* was more Convex than any other part of the Globe ; by which means, all the Rays are gathered to pass through the *Pupilla*, and none of them are lost upon the *Uvea*.

*How the Parts  
of the Eye  
contribute to  
it.*

The Aqueous Humour being the thinnest and most liquid, easily changes its figure, when either the *Ligamentum Ciliare* contracts, or both the Oblique Muscles squeeze the middle of the Bulb of the Eye, to render it oblong when Objects are too near us.

The straight Fibres of the *Uvea* dilate the *Pupilla*, when there are but few Rays of Light ; and the Circular Fibres contract it, when they are too many. When the *Pupilla* is contracted, we see most distinctly ; when it is dilated, we see most clearly. The Glassy Humour keeps the Chryalline Humour at such

such a distance from the *Retina*, as is necessary for uniting the Rays which come from one Point of the Object, exactly in one Point of the *Retina*.

The impression of the Object is made upon the *Retina*. The *Choroides* is tinctured black, that the Rays of Light which pass through the *Retina*, may not be reflected back again, to confuse the Image of the Object.

Being distinct, Vision consists in the union of all the Rays which come from one Point of an Object exactly in one Point of the *Retina*; and that the Rays which come from Objects at different distances, are united at different distances, behind the Chryalline Humour: They cannot both be united exactly upon the *Retina*; therefore the Eye cannot see equally distinctly at the same time Objects at different distances. It is for this reason that the Globe of the Eye moves so quickly, and almost continually, and that the Muscles of the Eyes have such a great quantity of Nerves to perform their motion.

When the Globe of the Eye is flat, as happens sometimes in Old Age, that the Rays pass the *Retina* before they unite, in such a case there is no distinct Vision; and such as have this defect, are call'd *Presbitæ*. And if, on the contrary, the Globe of the Eye be so

Convex

Convex as to unite the Rays before they come to the *Retina*, neither is there then any distinct Vision, and such as have this defect are call'd *Myopes*.

## S E C T. V.

## Of the Ear.

*Of the External Ear.*

THE Ear is divided into the External and Internal. The External Ear (whose Parts have already been described) is composed of the Skin, a Cartilage, and a little Fat. The Skin of this Part is thin and smooth, it sticks close to the Cartilage by means of a fine Membrane. The Cartilage is in that part of the External Ear call'd the *Pinna*; and the Fat, in that part call'd the Lobe. The Vessels of the External Ear, are Arteries from the *Carotidæ* Veins which go to the *Jugulares*, and Nerves from the *Portio Dura*, and second Pair of the Neck.

The External Ear is tied to the *Os Petrosum* by a strong Ligament which comes from the backside of the *Pinna*. Though the Ear has but a very obscure motion, yet it has two Muscles: The first arises from the outside of the Frontal Muscle, where it joins the *Crotaphite*, and is inserted into the upper and back-part of the *Pinna*. The second arises from

from the upper and foremost part of the *Processus Mammillaris*, and is inserted into the middle and back-part of the *Concha*. The first should draw the Ear upwards, and the second downwards and backwards ; but the continual binding of our Ears when young, deprives us of their Use. The Use of the External Ear is to gather the Sounds, and to carry them to the Internal. Its Inequalities and Circles do moderate the violence of the Air.

The Internal Ear begins at the *Conduit* which goes from the middle of the *Concha* to the *Tympanum* ; it is call'd *Meatus Auditorius*. *Of the Meatus Auditorius.* It is Cartilaginous from the *Concha* till within a little of the *Tympanum*, where it is Bony ; yet this Cartilage goes not compleatly round, for towards the Temple its edges do not meet by above a Line. The Passage is crooked, running first upwards, and then downwards to the *Tympanum*. It is cover'd within by a pretty thick Membrane. Betwixt this Membrane and the Cartilage, especially where it is slit, there are a great number of little Glands, whose Excretory Channels piercing this Membrane, carry a yellow sort of Excrement into the *Meatus*, which hinders Insects or any other thing to enter the Ear.

At

Of the Tympanum.

At the further Extremity of this Conduit there is a thin transparent Membrane stretched out like the Head of a Drum, upon a bony Circle which wants about half a Line of being compleat. The Handle of the *Malleolus* is tied to this Membrane, which it draws somewhat inwards, making it a little Concave towards the *Meatus Auditorius*: And there runs a small twig of a Nerve from the fifth Pair upon its inside, call'd *Chorda Tympani*; for the Membrane it self is call'd *Tympanum*.

Of the Barrel.

Behind this Membrane there is a pretty large Cavity call'd the Barrel; it is about three or four Lines deep, and five or six wide. It is lined with a fine Membrane, on which there are several Veins and Arteries. It is always full of a purulent Matter in Children. In this Cavity there are four small Bones, of which,

Of the Malleolus.

The first is the *Malleolus* or Hammer, so call'd, because of its shape. Its Head has on its lower side two Protuberances and a Cavity whereby its joined to the *Incus* by *Ginglymus*: Its Handle, which is pretty long and small, is fastened to the *Tympanum*. Near its Head it has two small Processes, and it is moved by three Muscles.

In Muscles.

The first is call'd the *Externus*; it arises from the upper and External side of

of the *Meatus Auditorius*, and is inserted into the upper and longer Process of the *Malleolus*, which it draws outwards. This is necessary, when Sounds are too great, which might break the *Tympanum*.

The second is the *Oblliquus*; it lies in the external part of the Conduit which goes to the Palate, and entring the Barrel, it is contained in a Sinuosity of the Bone by the upper edge of the *Tympanum*, and is inserted into the slender Process of the Hammer, assisting the former Muscle in its Action.

The third is the *Internus*, which arises from the extremity of the bony part of the Conduit which leads to the *Fauces*, and lies in a *Sinus* of the *Os Petrosum*, till it passes over a little rising of the Bone at the *Fenestra Ovalis*, to be inserted into the posterior part of the Handle of the *Malleolus*. This Muscle, by pulling the Hammer inwards, distends the *Tympanum*.

The second small Bone is call'd *Incus*, of the *Incus*, the Anvil: It has a Head, and two Legs. Its Head has a Protuberance, and two Cavities, whereby it is articulate with the Hammer; the shorter of its Legs is tied to the side of that Conduit which goes to the *Processus Mammillaris*, and its longer Leg to the Head of the third Bone, call'd,

The *Stapes* or Stirrup, because of its resemblance to a

resemblance. 'Tis of a triangular figure, being made of two branches set upon a flat basis, which stands upon the *Foramen Ovale*. The space between the two branches is fill'd up by a fine transparent Membrane; the union of the two branches is call'd the Head of the Stirrop, in which there is a small Cavity, in which lies the fourth Bone. There is a small Muscle which arises out of a small Canal in the bottom of the Barrel, and which is inserted into the Head of the Stirrop.

*Of the Os Orbiculare.* which is a very small Bone, being Convex on that side which is received in the Cavity of the Head of the Stirrop, and hollow on the other side, where it receiyes the long Leg of the Anvil, which is only joined to the Stirrop by means of this fourth Bone.

*Of the Holes in the Barrel.* Besides these Bones, there are several Holes in the Barrel. The first is in its forepart nearest the *Tympanum*. It is the entry to the *Sinus* in the Mammillary Process. The second is the Orifice of a Conduit which opens behind the Palate of the Mouth. The beginning of this Conduit is bony; and its extremity, which is near the *Uvula*, is membranous. Part of the Air which we breath, enters by this Conduit into the Ear. The third and fourth are in the Internal Process

Process of the *Os Petrosum*. The one is call'd *Fenestra Ovalis*; the basis of the Stirrup stands upon it; it is the entry to the *Vestibulum*. The other is call'd *Fenestra Rotunda*; it is cover'd by a fine Membrane, in chased in a rift of this Hole: It leads to the *Cochlea*.

The *Vestibulum* is a Cavity in the *Os Petrosum*, behind the *Fenestra Ovalis*; it is cover'd with a fine Membrane: In it open the Semi-circular Pipes of the Labyrinth. The upper turning of the *Cochlea*, and the Auditory Nerve, pierces into it also.

The *Labyrinth* is made of three Semi-circular Pipes excavated in the *Os Petrosum*; they open by five Orifices into the *Vestibulum*. That which is call'd the Superior Pipe, joins one of its Extremities with one of the Extremities of that which is call'd the Inferior Pipe, and these two Extremities open by one Orifice, but the middle Pipe opens at each end by it self into the *Vestibulum*.

The last Cavity of the Ear is the *Cochlea*; it resembles a Snail's Shell. Its Canal, which winds in a Spiral Line, is divided in two, the Upper and Lower, by a thin *Lamina Spiralis*. The edge of this *Lamina* is membranous, where there are several Holes, through which twigs of the Auditory Nerve pass from the one Canal to the other. The

Upper Canal opens into the *Vestibulum*, and the Lower into the Barrel, by the *Fenestra Rotunda*.

*Of the Vessels of the Ear.* The Vessels of the Internal Ear are Arteries and Veins from the Internal *Carotidæ* and *Jugulars*. The *Nervus Auditorius* enters by the Hole in the Internal Process of the *Os Petrosum*. It consists of two Bundles, of which one is hard, the other soft. Its *Portio Mollis* is distributed through all the *Cochlea* and *Labyrinth*, and the *Portio Dura* is bestowed on the External Parts about the Ear.

*Of Hearing.* A Sound is nothing but a certain Refraction or Modulation of the External Air, which being gathered by the External Ear, passes through the *Meatus Auditorius*, and beats upon the *Tympanum*, which moves the four little Bones in the Barrel. In like manner as it is beat by the External Air, these little Bones move the Internal Air which is in the Barrel and *Vestibulum*: which Internal Air makes an impression upon the Auditory Nerve in the *Labyrinth* and *Cochlea*, accordingly as it is moved by the little Bones in the Barrel. So that, according to the various Refractions of the External Air, the Internal Air makes various impressions upon the Auditory Nerve, the immediate Organ of Hearing; these different Impressions represent different Sounds.

S E C T.

## S E C T. VI.

## Of the Nose.

THE Nose may be divided into two Parts, the External and Internal. The External Part is covered with the Skin and some Muscles, of which afterwards. Its upper part consists of two Bones closely joined together on their upper side. Its lower part is made of four Cartilages, of which the first two are fixed to the lower ends of the aforesaid Bones ; they are also joined together on the upper side ; they are pretty broad, and as they approach the tip of the Nose, they grow thinner and softer. The other two lie upon the lower ends of the first two, to which they are tied by a Membrane ; They are call'd *Narium Ale.*

The Cavity made by these Bones and four Cartilages, is divided in its middle into two Nostrils, by a Partition, of which the upper end is bony, the lower end Cartilaginous: The fleshy Extremity of this Cartilage is call'd *Columna*.

The upper end of each side of this Cavity divides into two, of which one goes up to the *Os Spongiosum*, the other goes down into the *Fauces*, and opens behind the Palate, by which means we

*Of the Nose.*

breath through our Nostrils. At the lower end of this Cavity there are two small Holes which pierce the Bone of the Palate, and open in one behind the *Dentes Incisivi*; they carry the thin Rheum of the Nostrils into the Mouth.

This Cavity is cover'd by a pretty thick and glandulous Membrane; its Glands separate that Matter which we call *Mucus* into the Nostrils. On the lower end of this Membrane there grow several Hairs call'd *Vibrissi*; they, with the *Mucus* which the Glands separate, stop any filth from ascending too far into the Nostrils.

By the Internal Part of the Nose, we understand the immediate Organ of Smelling; it lies in the upper part of the Cavity of the Nostrils, it is made of the *Os Cribriiforme* and its Productions, the *Os Spongiosum*, of which each *Lamina* is cover'd with a fine Membrane, upon which the Fibres of the Olfactory Nerve which pass through the Holes of the *Os Cribriiforme*, and the Fibres of the first branch of the Fifth Pair, which come from the Orbit, are spread.

In this Membrane there are many small Glands which separate an Humour which moistens it, and stops the Exhalations of odoriferous bodies, which make their impression upon the Olfactory Nerves which are spread upon it.

Hounds

Hounds and other Beasts which have a more exquisite Smell than Men, have also many more *Lamina*, cover'd with such a Membrane.

There are several Conduits which open between these *Laminae*. The first and second are the *Ductus Lachrymales*, <sup>of the Conduits which open in the Nose.</sup> of which we have spoken before. The third and fourth come from the *Sinus Frontales*. The fifth and sixth come from the *Sinus's* of the second Bone of the Upper Jaw. The seventh and eighth come from the Cells of the *Os Spongiosum*, they pierce the Membrane which covers the first or uppermost *Lamina*: And the ninth and tenth come from the *Sinus* in the *Os Sphænoïdes*. All these Conduits carry the Liquor which is separate in their Cavities into the Nostrils, for the moistening its Membranes, which otherwise would dry too much by the Air which we breath through our Nostrils.

The Vessels of the Nose are Arteries from the Carotidals which pass with the Olfactory Nerve, they are distributed in the Internal Nose: The External Carotidal and Jugular, and the second branch of the Fifth Pair, give Arteries, Veins and Nerves to the External Nose. Some give an account why the smell of Bodies, which consist of acrimonious Parts, draw Tears from

*of the Vessels  
of the Nose.*

the Eyes ; and why the want of Taste does ordinarily accompany the want of Smelling, by the communication of the branches of the Fifth Pair of Nerves, which are distributed through these three Senses.

## S E C T. VII.

*Of the Mouth and Tongue.*

THE Parts of the Mouth, are the Lips, the Gums, the Palate, the *Uvula*, and the surrounding Glands.

*of the Lips and Gums.* The Lips are made up of several Muscles, of which afterwards. Their Use is to shut the Mouth, and to articulate the Voice.

The Gums are a hard sort of Flesh formed by the union of two Membranes, one of which is a Production of the *Periosteum*, and the other of the Internal Membrane of the Mouth : They are set about the Teeth, to keep them firm in their Sockets.

*of the Palate.* The Palate or Roof of the Mouth is covered with a pretty thick Membrane, which is continued to the Tonsils ; upon it there are a great number of little Glands, whose Excretory Ducts piercing it like a Sieve, discharge a Liquor for the moistening and dissolving of the Aliments. It is an Errour, to

think

think that the Palate Tastes ; for by it it's impossible to distinguish the most acrid Substances.

The *Uvula* is a Reduplicate or Production of the Internal Membrane of the Mouth ; its Substance is very lax, and it has a number of small Glands as in the Palate : It is somewhat long, of a Conick figure, it hangs from the Roof of the Mouth, at the extremity of the Passage which comes from the Nose, above the *Larynx*, between the Tonsils.

It is moved by two Pair of Muscles, which are,

The *Pterigostaphilinus Externus* ; it arises fleshy from a small Protuberance, upon the under side of the Body of the *Os Sphaenoides*, and goes directly to be inserted into the hind-part of the *Uvula*.

The *Pterigostaphilinus Internus* arises from the same Protuberance of the *Os Sphaenoides*, and growing into a small round Tendon, which passes over a small Process, like a Hook, of the *Processus Pterigoidans* ; from thence reverting, it's inserted into the forepart of the *Uvula*.

When the first of these Muscles acteth, it pulleth the *Uvula* backwards ; when the second contracteth, it pulleth the *Uvula* forwards, because of the Pulley through which its Tendon passes, which

alters the direction of its Motion ; both which Motions are necessary for the articulating the Voice, and in Deglutition, that nothing may regurgitate into the Nose which we take by the Mouth.

Of the Parotides.

The Glands, which are the Sourses of the Spittle, which discharges it self into the Mouth, are in great number, of which the principal are the *Parotides*, one on each side, situated under the Ear, above the *Musculus Masseter* ; they are of the Conglomerate sort, being made up of a great number of smaller Glands, each of which sends out a small Excretory Duct, and they all unite and form one Chanel call'd *Ductus Salivalis Superior*, which running over the Cheeks, pierces the *Buccinator*, and opens in the Mouth. When the *Masseter* acteth in Mastication, it presses the *Saliva* into the Mouth.

Of the Maxillares.

The *Maxillares*, which are situated within the Under Jaw, one in each side, are also of the Conglomerate sort ; the Excretory Pipes of their small Glands unite, and form two Ducts, which both together open under the tip of the Tongue, on the inside of the *Dentes Incisivi*, where they have each a small *Papilla* at their Orifice. When the Muscles of the Tongue or Lower Jaw act, they compræs these Glands.

The

The *Sublinguales* are one on each side <sup>of the Sub-</sup>  
of the Tongue; they have sometimes <sup>linguale.</sup>  
two Excretory Ducts, as the former,  
formed by the union of that of each  
small Gland; they run on each side of  
the Tongue, near its tip, where they  
open into the Mouth, just by the former,  
with which sometimes they join: Some-  
times these are wanting, and then each lit-  
tle Gland has a Duct which opens under  
the Tongue: When the *Mylohyoidens*  
acteth, it compresses them.

The *Tonsilla*, or Almonds, are two <sup>of the Ton-</sup>  
round Glands placed on the sides of the <sup>illa.</sup>  
basis of the Tongue, under the common  
Membrane of the *Fauces*, with which  
they are cover'd; each of them hath a  
large oval *Sinus*, which opens into the  
*Fauces*, and in it there are a great num-  
ber of lesser ones, which discharge them-  
selves through the great *Sinus*, of a  
mucous and slippery Matter, into the  
*Fauces*, *Larynx*, and *Oesophagus*, for the  
moistening and lubricating these Parts.  
When the Muscle *Oesophagius* acteth, it  
compresseth the *Tonsilla*.

Besides these, there are a great number  
of little Glands spread upon the Cheeks  
and Lips, call'd *Glandula Buccales* and  
*Labiales*, whose Excretory Channels open  
into the Mouth; and all of them sepa-  
rate the *Saliva* or Spittle, which con-  
duces in the dissolution of the Aliments.

The

The Tongue is connected in the Mouth to the *Os Hyoides*, to the *Larynx*, and by a membranous Ligament which is in the middle of its lower side. Sometimes this Ligament is continued to the tip of the Tongue, and then it hindereth Children from Sucking ; therefore in such a case it should be cut.

*Of the Membranes and Papillæ of the Tongue.*

The Tongue is covered with two Membranes. The External hath upon its upper part, and particularly towards the tip of the Tongue, a great number of *Papillæ*, of a Pyramidal figure ; they stand not up straight, but encline towards the basis of the Tongue ; they appear not so plainly in Men as in Brutes, in some of which last they grow Cartilaginous. Each *Papilla* has a small root, which makes a small hole in the viscous Substance, which lies between the two Membranes. In Men, the chief Use of these *Papilla Pyramidales* seems to be for preserving the *Papilla Nervosa*, which are of a softer Substance, that they be not hurt by the hardness or roughness of the Aliments : And in Beasts which feed upon Grass, which they gather together with their Tongue, these *Papilla* are like so many Hooks, for the grasping, cutting, and pulling of the Grass ; and perhaps, by their roughness rubbing upon the Palate, they conduce

duce to press the Spittle out of the Glands. Towards the basis of the Tongue are to be seen several small Glands like those of the Cheeks.

Under the External Membrane there lies a thin viscous Substance, which is white on that side next the External Membrane, and black on that side next the Internal. When the Tongue is boiled, this Substance hardens, and is like a Searce, being full of small holes made by the roots of the *Papille Pyramidales*.

The Internal Membrane is thin and soft; upon it there appear several *Papille* made of the Extremities of the Nerves of the Tongue, therefore they are called *Nervosa*: They are situated upon the sides of the Tongue, but chiefly towards its tip; they resemble the small Horns of a Snail; for their Extremities are round, and bigger than the rest of their Bodies. The Extremity of each *Papille* pierces the External Membrane of the Tongue. They quit those Holes, and remain on the Internal Membrane, when the External is raised. These *Papille* are the immediate Organ of Tasting.

The Substance of the Tongue is muc- Of its Substance.  
culous, being made of Plans of Fibres  
of different Directions.

ed T

The

The first or External Plan is made of straight Fibres, which surround the Tongue, reaching from its Basis to its Point : When they contract, they shorten the Tongue. Under them there are several Plans of Fibres, which run from one edge of the Tongue to the other ; they draw the edges of the Tongue together. There are also several Plans of Fibres, which run from the under to the upper side of the Tongue : When they contract, they make the Tongue broad and thin. These two sorts of Fibres lie *Stratum super Stratum*, from the tip of the Tongue to its basis ; first a Plan of one sort, and then a Plan of the other sort. There is some Fat betwixt these Fibres, but chiefly towards the basis of the Tongue.

*Its Vessels.*

The Vessels of the Tongue are Veins from the Jugulars, call'd *Ranulares* : It has Arteries from the Carotidals, and Nerves from the Fifth and Ninth Pair.

*of its Muscles.*

The Muscles of the Tongue are Three Pair.

The *Styloglossus* ; it arises fleshy from the *Processus Styloides*, from thence descending, it is inserted into the Root of the Tongue : It draws the Tongue upwards.

The

The second Pair is the *Genioglossus* ; it arises from the inside of the forepart of the Lower Jaw, and is inserted into the Root of the Tongue ; it pulls the Tongue out of the Mouth.

The third is the *Ceratoglossus* ; it arises broad and fleshy from the sides of the *Os Hyoides*, and is inserted into the Root of the Tongue ; it pulls the Tongue directly into the Mouth. The Fibres of this Muscle which are nearest the Extremities of the *Os Hyoides*, were only call'd the *Ceratoglossus*, and those which were nearest the basis of the *Os Hyoides* were call'd the *Basioglossus* : But I see no reason to distinguish them, being they lie in the same Plan, and their Fibres have the same Direction, Origination, and Insertion.

The Tongue is not only moved by *Os Hyoides*. <sup>Of the Os</sup> these Muscles, but also by a Bone call'd *Os Hyoides*. Now this Bone lies at the Root of the Tongue : Its Figure is like the Greek letter *v* ; it is composed ordinarily of three Bones, that in the middle makes its basis, it is shorter than the other two ; it is Convex without, but Concave within ; the other two are joined to its two ends by two intervening Cartilages, they are much longer than the first ; they have each a Cartilage at their Extremities, and they are call'd the *Cornua*, or Horns. The

The Basis of this Bone is joined to the Root of the Tongue, and its Horns are joined to the upper Angles of the *Cartilago Thyroides*, and by two small and round Ligaments to the *Processus Styloides* of each side. This Bone is moved, and with it the Tongue, by five Pair of Muscles.

*Of its Muscles.* The first is the *Geniohyoides*; it arises fleshy from the forepart of the Lower-Jaw internally, and is inserted into the Basis of the *Os Hyoides*. It pulls the *Os Hyoides* and the Tongue upwards and forwards.

Its Antagonist is the *Sternohyoides*; it arises from the inside of the *Clavula*, and ascending above the *Sternothyroides*, it's inserted into the Basis of the *Os Hyoides*, which it pulls downwards.

The third is the *Mylohyoides*; it ariseth fleshy from the inside of the Lower Jaw, under the *Dentes Molares*, and is implanted into the sides of the Basis of the *Os Hyoides*: It draweth this Bone and Tongue obliquely upwards.

Its Antagonist is the *Caracohyoides*; it is wrong named, for it arises not from the *Processus Coracoides*, but from the upper edge of the *Scapula*, near its Neck, and ascending obliquely under the *Mastoides*, it is inserted into the *Os Hy-*

*Os Hyoides*, which it pulls obliquely downwards. The Belly of this Muscle is a little tendinous in its middle, that the Vessels which go to the Head be not compressed when it acteth.

The fifth Pair is the *Stylohyoides*; it arises from the *Processus Styloides*, and descending obliquely, is inserted into the Horns of the *Os Hyoides*, which it draws to one side, and a little upwards.

The Belly of this Muscle is perforated for the passage of the Tendon in the middle of the *Digastricus*.

## C H A P.

## C H A P. V.

## Of the BONES.

## S E C T. I.

## Of the Bones in general.

**T**Hough after the Description of the three Cavities it is usual to give the Myology; yet because it cannot be understood without a perfect Knowledge of the Bones, therefore we shall begin with them.

*Of the Nourishment of the Bones.*

The Bones are made up of hard Fibres, tied to one another by small transverse Fibres, as those of the Muscles are. In a *Fœtus* those Fibres are porous, soft, and easily discerned. It is probable that they are nourished by the Serous or Lymphatick part of the Blood, which is brought to them by the Arteries, and carried back by the Veins. As their Pores fill with a Substance of their own Nature, such as we suppose the *Lympha* to be, so they encrease, harden, and grow close to one another: but when their Pores are full of this Substance,

stance, then the Bones are grown to their utmost extent, hardness, and solidity, their Blood-Vessels being compressed on all sides by their bony Channels, bring no more Blood than what is sufficient to supply the places of their decaying Particles.

All the Bones of the Body which have *of the Use of*  
any considerable thickness, have either a *the Marrow.*  
large Cavity, or they are Spongy, and full of little Cells: In both the one and the other there is an Oleaginous Substance call'd Marrow, contained in proper Vessels or Membranes, like the Fat. In the larger Bones, this fine Oil, by the gentle heat of the Body, is exhaled through the Pores of its small Bladders, and enters some narrow Passages which lead to some fine Channels excavated in the Substance of the Bone, according to its length; and from these, other cross Passages (not directly opposite to the former, lest they should weaken the Bone too much in one place) carry the Marrow still further into more Longitudinal Channels placed nearer the Surface of the Bone. All this Contrivance is, that the Marrow may supply the Fibres of the Bones, and render them less apt to break.

All the Bones of the Body, except the Teeth, and where the Bones are articulate to one another, are cover'd with a thin,

thin, but close and strong Membrane call'd *Periosteum*; it has an Exquisite Sense, which gives me ground to think that it is an Expansion of some of the tendinous Fibres of the Muscles. Its Use is to sustain the Vessels, which enter the Substance of the Bones with their Nourishment.

Each large Bone is much bigger at its extremities than in the middle, that the Articulations might be firm, and the Bones not easily put out of Joint: But because the middle of the Bone should be strong, to sustain the weight of the Body, and resist blows and falls, therefore the Fibres there are closely compacted together, supporting one another; and the Bone is made hollow, and consequently not so easily broken as it must have been had it been solid and smaller: For of two Bones of equal length and equal numbers of Fibres, the strength of the one will be to the strength of the other as their Diameters.

Of the Cavi-  
ties and Pro-  
tuberances of  
the Bones.

On the external Surface of the Bones there are several Cavities and Protuberances. The Cavities are of two sorts, either narrow and shallow, or wide and deep. The first sort is call'd *Glene*; the second *Cotyle*. But in describing the Bones in particular, we shall also describe their Cavities. The Protuberances

berances are also of two sorts, *viz.* *Apophysis* and *Epiphysis*. The *Apophysis* is a Protuberance made by the Fibres of the Bone; and *Epiphysis* is a Protuberance made by a small Bone set upon the extremity of a bigger Bone, which, as we advance in Age, unite in one. Both the one and the other are ordinarily upon the extremities of the Bones, and they are either for the Insertions of Muscles, whose force they greatly augment, or for the Articulation of the Bones. All their difference is from their Figure. If it be a large and round Protuberance, it is call'd *Caput*; and the Part immediately under it, *Cervix*: but if it be small and round, then it is called *Condylus*. If it be a sharp Protuberance, then it is call'd *Corone*, *Styloides*, *Coracoides*, &c. according to its Figure.

In the Bones there is much Volatile Salt and Spirit, which are very subtile and penetrating; some Sulphur, which is very stinking, a little Phlegm, and much Earth.

*Analysis of  
the Bones.*

S E C T.

Cartilages and Ligaments are associated

## S E C T. II.

Of the Cartilages and Ligaments  
in general.

A Cartilage is a smooth and solid Body, softer than a Bone, but harder than a Ligament. In it there are no Cavities nor Cells for containing of Marrow, nor is it covered with any Membrane to make it sensible, as the Bones are. The Cartilages have all a natural resort, by which, if they are forced from their Natural figure or situation, they return to it of themselves, as soon as the force is taken away. They are chiefly in those places where a small and easie motion is required, as in the Ears, Nose, *Larynx*, *Trachea*, *Arteria* and *Sternum*; and their Natural Elasticity serves instead of Antagonist Muscles. They cover also the ends of all the Bones, which are joined together for motion. First, Because they are smoother than the Bones. Secondly, Because they are without Sense. And, Thirdly, Being softer than the Bones, the Attrition which is made by the motion of the Joint, is the more easily supplied.

A Ligament is a white and solid Body, softer than a Cartilage, but harder than

than a Membrane ; they have no conspicuous Cavities, neither have they any Sense, lest they should always suffer upon the motion of the Joint. Their chief Use is to fasten the Bones, which are articulated for motion together, lest they should be dislocated in any violent motion.

## S E C T. III.

*Of the Articulation of the Bones.*

**T**H E Bones are articulated or joined *Of the Joining  
of the Bones.*  
to one another, either with a manifest motion, or with a small and obscure motion, or without any motion at all. The first sort of Articulation is call'd *Diarthrosis* : The second, because of the Cartilage by which it is performed, is call'd *Synchondrosis* : And the last, *Synarthrosis*.

Of the *Diarthrosis* there are two sorts, viz. *Enarthrosis* or *Arthrodia*, and *Ginglymus*. The First is, when a round Head of a Bone is received into a round Cavity of another, such as the Articulation of the *Femur* with the *Ischium* ; and this sort of Joining is call'd, by Tradesmen, the Ball and Socket. The property of this Joining is, that the Parts so articulated move equally to any side. The *Ginglymus* is, when a Bone both receives

receives and is received ; and the property of this sort of Articulation is to admit only of the motions of Flexion and Extension ; It is called by Tradesmen *Charnall*, and it is commonly used in hinges. Of this Articulation there are three sorts. The first is when the end of a Bone has two Protuberances and one Cavity, and the end of the Bone which is articulated with it has two Cavities and one Protuberance, as the *Humerus* and the *Ulna*. The second is, when a Bone at one extremity receives another Bone, and at its other extremity it is received by the same Bone, as the *Radius* and *Ulna*. The third sort is, when a Bone at one end receives another Bone, and at the other end it is received by a third Bone, as the *Vertebra* do.

The Second sort of Articulation, which is call'd *Synchondrosis*, is when the Extremities of two Bones are joined to one another by means of an intervening Cartilage. Thus the Bodies of the *Vertebra*, and the Extremities of the Ribs and *Sternum*, are joined together, where, though the motion of all is manifest, yet that of any two is hardly discernable.

The Third manner of Articulation, call'd *Synarthrosis*, is of two sorts, viz. *Sutura*, and *Gomphosis*. The *Sutura* is, when

when two Bones are mutually indented in one another ; the Teeth by which they are indented are of various figures ; sometimes they are like the Teeth of a Saw ; sometimes they are broad at their Extremities, and narrow at their Basis ; sometimes the sides of the Teeth are likewise indented, and sometimes there are little Bones between the Teeth which are also indented ; these are most frequently in the *Sutura Lambdoidalis*, and they serve as Wedges to keep the Teeth firm. Besides these little Bones, there is ordinarily a viscous Humour which glews the Indentations together, and which perfectly unites them in several Old Persons.

This sort of Articulation is call'd by Joiners *Dove-tailing*, and is used in Drawers, Cabinets, and Boxes. All the Bones of the *Cranium* and Upper Jaw, as also all the *Epiphyses* of the Bones, are joined by this sort of Articulation.

*Gomphosis* is when one Bone is fasten'd in another, as a Pin or Nail is in a piece of Wood, and the Teeth only are articulated this way in their Sockets.

To these we may add a third kind of *Synarthrosis*, very different from any of the former, which is, when a Bone has a long and narrow Chanel which receives a small Process or the Edge of

another Bone ; and thus the *Vomer* is articulated to the *Os Sphaenoides* and *Septum Narium*. By Tradesmen this manner of Joining is call'd *Ploughing*, which we may therefore call  $\Sigma \chi \rho \delta \lambda \mu \sigma$ . These comprehend all the different Joinings of the Bones in the Humane Body, and therefore I shall not mention several others which we find in Authors to no purpose.

The Extremities of all the Bones that are articulated to one another with a manifest motion, are bound together by membranous Ligaments which rise from the conjunction of the *Epiphysis* with the Bone ; and passing over the Articulation, are inserted at the same place in the other Bone. Thus they form a Bag which embraces all that part of the Extremities of both Bones which play upon one another ; and in this Bag is contained a Mucilage for the easier motion of the Joint ; this Mucilage is separated by some Glands which lie in some Fat on the inside of the Ligaments. Those Bones which are articulated by a *Ginglymus* have the Ligaments much stronger on their sides than they are either before or behind, that the Protruberances may be kept to play true in their Cavities ; for if they might slip the least to either side, the Bones would be frequently out of Joint.

S E C T.

## S E C T. IV.

## Of the Bones of the Cranium.

THE *Cranium* or Skull is made up of several pieces, which being joined together, form a considerable Cavity, which contains the Brain, as in a Box.

The bigness of the *Cranium* is proportionate to the bigness of the Brain. Its Figure is round, a little depressed on its sides. A round figure being the most capacious, was fittest to contain a great quantity of Brains. And the flatness of its sides help to enlarge the Sight and Hearing.

Each Bone in the *Cranium* is made up of two Tables or *Lamina*, between which there is a thin and spongy Substance, made of some bony Fibres which come from each *Lamina*, call'd in Greek *Diploe*, in Latin *Meditullum*.

In it there are a great number of Veins and Arteries, which bring Blood for the Nourishment of the Bones. The Tables are hard and solid, because in them the Fibres of the Bones are close to one another. The *Diploe* is soft, because the bony Fibres are at a greater distance from one another. By this Contrivance, the *Cranium* is not only made lighter, but also less subject to be broken.

The External *Lamina* is smooth, and covered with the *Pericranium*. The Internal is likewise smooth; but on it there are several furrows made by the pulse of the Arteries of the *Dura Mater*, whilst the *Cranium* was soft and yielding.

The Bones of the *Cranium* are joined to one another by four Sutures. The first is call'd the *Coronalis*. It reaches transversly from one Temple to the other; it joins the *Os Frontis* with the *Os Parietalia*. The second is call'd *Lambdoidalis*, because it resembles the Greek letter ( $\Lambda$ ) *Lambda*; it joins the *Os Occipitis* to the *Os Parietalia* and *Petrosa*. The third is call'd *Sagittalis*; it begins at the top of the *Lambdoidalis*, and runs straight to the middle of the *Coronalis*; it joins the two *Os Parietalia* together. The fourth is call'd *Sutura Squamosa*, because the Parts of these Bones which are joined by this Suture, are, as it were, cut slope-wise, and lapp'd over one another.

This Suture joins the Semicircular Circumference of the *Os Temporum* to the *Os Sphænoïdes Occipitis*, and to the *Os Parietalia*. The first three Sutures were call'd *Suturae Verae*; and the last *Sutura Falsa*, because it was supposed to have no Indentations, which is false.

The

The Bones of the *Craniū* are not only joined to one another, but they are also joined to the Bones of the Upper Jaw by three other Sutures. Of the Sutura Transversalis, Ethmoidalis, and Sphenoïdalis.

The first is the *Transversalis*, it runs across the Face, it passes from the little Angle of the Eye down to the bottom of the Orbit, and up again by the great Angle of the Eye over the Root of the Nose ; and so to the little Angle of the other Eye. It joins the *Os Frontis* to the Bones of the Upper Jaw. The second is the *Ethmoidalis*, it surrounds the Bone of that Name, and joins it to the Bones which are about it. The third is the *Sutura Sphenoïdalis*, it surrounds the *Os Sphenoïdes*, joins it to the *Os Occipitis*, the *Offa Petrosa*, and to the *Os Frontis*.

The *Craniū* is made of several pieces joined together by Sutures, that it might be the stronger, and less apt to break, that several Membranes and Vessels which suspend the *Dura Mater*, and which go to the *Pericranium*, may pass through the Sutures, and that the Matter of Transpiration may pass through them.

Now the Bones of the *Craniū* are six Proper, and two Common to it and the Upper Jaw. The six Proper are, the *Os Frontis*, which makes the fore-part of the Skull ; the *Os Occipitis*,

which makes the hind-part; and the *Offa Parietalia* and *Temporum*, which make the sides. The two Common are, the *Sphænoïdes* and the *Os Ethmoïdes*, which are part of the basis of the Skull.

*Os Frontis.*

The first of the Proper, is the *Os Frontis* or *Coronale*; it is almost round; it joins the Bones of the *Sinciput* and Temples by the *Coronal Suture*, and the Bones of the Upper Jaw by the *Sutura Transversalis*, and the *Os Sphænoïdes* by the *Sutura Sphænoïdalis*. It forms the upper part of the Orbit, and it has four *Apophyses*, which are at the four Angles of the two Orbita. It has two Holes above the Orbita, through which pass a Vein, Artery, and some twigs of the first branch of the fifth Pair of Nerves. It has also one in each Orbit a little above the *Os Planum*, through which a twig of the Ophthalmick branch of the fifth Pair passes to the Nose; it is the *Oræter Internus*. It has two *Sinus's* above the Eye-brows, between its two Tables; they are lined with a thin Membrane, in which there are several Blood-Vessels and Glands, which separate a mucous Serosity, which falls into the Nostrils. The inside of this Bone has several Inequalities, made by the Vessels of the *Dura Mater*. It has two large dimples made by the anterior

anterior Lobes of the Brain. Above the *Crista Galli* it has a small blind Hole, into which the end of the *Sinus Longitudinalis* is inserted. From this Hole it has a pretty large Spine which runs up along its middle ; instead of this Spine, there is sometimes a *Sinus*, in which lies the *Sinus Longitudinalis*, which ought to be observed carefully by Surgeons in Wounds in this place. This Bone is thicker than the *Sinciput* Bones, but thinner than the *Os Occipitis*. In Children it is always divided in its middle by a true Suture.

The second and third are the Bones <sup>Offa Parie-</sup> of the *Sinciput* call'd *Parietalia* ; they <sup>talia,</sup> are the thinnest Bones of the *Cranium* ; they are almost square, somewhat long ; they are joined to the *Os Frontis* by the *Sutura Coronalis*, to one another in the Crown of the Head by the *Sutura Sagittalis*, to the *Os Occipitis* by the *Lambdoidalis*, and to the *Offa Temporum* by the *Sutura Squamosa*. They are smooth and equal on their outside, but on their inside they have several furrows, made by the Pulse of the Arteries of the *Dura Maser*. They have each a small Hole near the *Sutura Sagittalis*, through which there pass some Veins which carry the Blood from the Teguments to the *Sinus Longitudinalis*.

Offa Temporo-  
rum.

The fifth and sixth are the *Offa Temporum*, situated in the lower part of the sides of the *Cranium*; their upper part, which is thin, consisting only of one Table, is of a circular figure, and is joined to the *Offa Parietalia* by the *Sutura Squamosa*: Their lower part, which is thick, hard, and unequal, is joined to the *Os Occipitis* and to the *Os Sphænoïdes*; this Part is call'd *Os Petrosum*; they have each three External *Apophyses* or *Processes*, and one Internal. The first of the External is the *Processus Zygomaticus*, which runs fore-wards and unites with the Process of the *Os Mali*, making that Bridge call-ed the *Zygoma*, under which lies the Tendon of the *Crotaphite Muscle*. The second is the *Mammillaris*, or *Mastoides*; it is short and thick, situated behind the *Meatus Auditorius*. The third is the *Processus Styloformis*, which is long and small; to it the Horns of the *Os Hyoides* are tied. The Internal Process is pretty long and big in the basis of the Skull, it contains all the Cavities and little Bones of the Ear, which have been already de-scribed. The Holes in the Temporal Bones are two Internal, and four External. The first of the Internal, is the Hole through which the Auditory Nerve passes; the second is common to it and the *Os Oc-cipitis*;

*cipitis*; the Eighth Pair of Nerves, and the Lateral *Sinus's* pass through it. The first of the External Holes is the *Meatus Auditorius Externus*. The second opens behind the Palate; it is the end of that Passage which comes from the Barrel of the Ear to the Mouth. The third is the Orifice of the Conduit by which the Carotidale Arteries enter the *Cranium*: And the fourth is behind the *Processus Mastoideus*; by it passes a Vein which carries the Blood from the External Teguments to the Lateral *Sinus's*. Sometimes this Hole is wanting; there is another which is between the *Processus Mastoideus* and the *Styliformis*, through which the *Portio Dura* of the Auditory Nerve passes. They have each a *Sinus* lined with a Cartilage under the *Meatus Auditorius*, which receives the Condyle of the Lower Jaw.

The sixth Bone of the *Cranium* is *Os Occipitis*, the *Os Occipitis*, it lies in the hind-part of the Head; it is almost like a Lozenge with its lower Angle turned inwards; it joins the *Offa Parietalia* and *Petrosa* by the *Sutura Lambdoidalis*, and the *Os Sphænoïdes* by the *Sphænoïdal*is. It is thicker than any of the other Bones of the *Cranium*, yet it is very thin where the *Splenius*, *Complexus* and *Trapezius* are inserted. Externally it is rough; internally it has two *Sinus's*, in

which lie the two Protuberances of the *Cerebellum*, and two large furrows in which lie the *Sinus Laterales*. It has seven Holes; the first two are common to it and the *Osse Petrosa*, the *Lateral Sinus's*, and the *Par Vagum*, pass through them. The third is the great Hole through which the *Medulla Spinalis* passes. The fourth and fifth are the Holes through which the ninth Pair of Nerves passes. The sixth and seventh are two Holes through which there pass two Veins which bring the Blood from the External Teguments to the *Sinus Laterales*; sometimes there is but one, and sometimes none of these two; there are sometimes two more through which the Vertebral Veins pass. This Bone has also two *Apophyses*, one on each side of the great Hole; they are lined with a Cartilage, and articulated with the first *Vertebra* of the Neck. It has also a Protuberance in its middle, from which there goes a small Ligament which is inserted into the first *Vertebra* of the Neck. It is longer in Beasts than in Men.

*Os Sphœnoïdes.*

The first of the Bones common to the Skull and Upper Jaw, is the *Sphœnoïdes*. It is a Bone of a very irregular figure. It is situated in the middle of the basis of the Skull. It is joined to all the Bones of the *Cranium* by the *Sutura*

*Sutura Sphænoïdalis*, except in the middle of its sides, where it is continued to the *Osse Petrosa* as they were one Bone. On its outside it has five *Apophyses*. The first two are broad and thin like a Bat's Wings, they are call'd *Pterigoïdes*; they have each a pretty long *Sinus*, from which the Muscles call'd *Pterigoïdei* arise; and at their lower end they have each a small Hook like a *Proces*, upon which the *Peristaphilinus Externus* turns its *Tendon*. The third and fourth make the Internal and lower part of the *Orbit*; and the fifth is a little *Apophyse* like the *Crista Galli* in its forepart, which is received in a Cavity at the further end of the *Vomer*. There is also a little small *Protuberance* in the middle of this Bone, from which the Muscles of the *Uvula* arise. On its inside it has four *Processes* call'd *Clinoides*, they form a Cavity in the middle of this Bone call'd *Cella Turcica*, in which lies the *Glandula Pituitaria*. Betwixt the two Tables of this Bone, under the *Cella Turcica*, there is a *Sinus*, divided in two in its middle, which opens by two Holes into the Cavity of the *Nostrils*. In the *Os Sphænoïdes* there are twelve Holes; by the first and second pass the *Optick Nerves*; by the third and fourth, which are call'd *Foramina Lacera*, pass the third Pair, fourth Pair.

Pair, first branch of the fifth Pair, and the sixth Pair; by the fifth and sixth pass the second branch of the fifth Pair; by the seventh and eighth pass the third branch of the same Pair; by the ninth and tenth enter the Arteries of the *Dura Mater*; and by the eleventh and twelfth enter the Internal Carotidales, and the Intercostal Nerve goes out. The Canal by which the Carotidales enter are oblique, the beginning of them is made in the *Osse Petrosa*, and they open within the Skull in the *Sphænoïdes*.

*Os Ethmoïdes.*

The second and last of the common Bones is the *Os Ethmoïdes*, situated in the middle of the basis of the *Os Frontis*, joined to that Bone and to the *Os Sphænoïdes* by the *Sutura Ethmoidalis*. In its middle it has a small Process called *Crista Galli*, to which the fore end of the *Falx* is tied. This Bone is perforated by a number of small Holes, through which the Fibres of the Olfactory Nerve pass, therefore it is also call'd *Os Cribriforme*. From its under side there goes a thin Bone, which divides the Cavity of the Nostrils in two; the lower edge of this Bone is Grooved with the *Vomer*. On each side of this Partition it has several thin spongy *Laminae*, call'd *Osse Spongiosa*; they are full of little Cells, where they are joined to the *Ethmoïdes*.

*Ethmoides.* There are two *Lamina* which neither adhere to the *Os Ethmoides*, nor to the other *Lamina*, but only by the Membrane which covers them all. The two External *Laminae* of the *Offa Spongiosa* make part of the Orbit at the great *Canthus*, and they are call'd *Offa Plana*, because they are smooth and even.

## S E C T. V.

## Of the Bones of the Upper Jaw.

THE Bones of the Upper Jaw are two Common to it and the Skull, which have been already described; and eleven Proper, that is, five in each side, and one in the middle; they are joined to the Bones of the Skull by the three Common Sutures, and joined to one another by a fine but true Suture.

The First of the Proper Bones is the *Os Mali* or *Zygoma*; it is of a triangular figure. Its upper side makes the lower and external part of the circumference of the Orbit, where it joins the *Os Sphænoides*. Its Internal side joins the *Os Maxillare*. Its External has a long Process, which joining that of the *Offa Temporum*, forms the *Processus Zygomaticus*; it joins the *Os Frontis* at the little Angle of the Eye. It is

Concave

Concave within, and it sticks out a little forwards, making the highest part of the Cheek.

*Os Maxillare.* The Second is the *Os Maximum* or *Maxillare*, because in it all the Teeth of the Upper Jaw are set. It is of a very irregular figure. On its outside it joins the *Os Mali*. Its upper side makes the lower and Internal part or circumference of the Orbit. At its great *Canthus* it joins the *Os Unguis* and *Frontis*. The lower side of the *Os Nasi* is joined to it. Under the Upper Lip it joins with its fellow of the other side, and both joined together make the fore and greatest part of the Roof of the Mouth. It is very thin, and between its two *Laminae* it has a large Cavity which opens by a small Hole into the Nostrils. In its lower end it has sixteen *Sinus's* or Sockets, in which the Teeth are set. It has a small Hole called *Orbiter Externus*, in that part of it which makes part of the Orbit, through which the Nerves of the fifth Pair which come from the Teeth pass. Behind the *Dentes Incisivi*, where it joins with its fellow, it has another which comes from the Nostrils.

*Os Unguis.* The Third is the *Os Unguis*, it is a little thin Bone which lies in the great Angle of the Orbit, it has a Hole in which the Lachrymal Sack lies. I see no reason why this Bone should be counted

counted a Bone of the Upper Jaw, seeing it lies entirely in the great Angle of the Orbit ; there is more reason to count it a *Lamina of the Os Spongiosum*, as the *Os Planum*.

The Fourth is the *Os Nasi* ; this is a thin but solid Bone, which makes the upper part of the Nose ; its upper end is joined to the *Os Frontis* by the *Sutura Transversalis* : one of its fides joins its fellow, where they are supported by the *Septum Narium*. Its other side joins the *Os Maxillare*. Upon its lower-end the Cartilages of the Nostrils are fastened. Externally it is smooth, but Internally it is rough.

Os Nasi.

The Fifth Bone of the Upper Jaw is the *Os Palati* ; it is a small Bone almost square, it makes the posterior part of the Roof of the Mouth. It is joined to that part of the *Os Maxillare* which makes the forepart of the Palate. It is also joined to its fellow, and to the *Processus Pterygoideus*. It has a small Hole through which a branch of the fifth goes to the Membrane of the Palate.

Os Palati.

The Eleventh and last is call'd the *Vomer*, it is situated in the middle of the lower part of the Nose. It has a cleft in its upper side, in which cleft it receives the lower edge of the *Septum Nasi*. In its further end it receives a small

Vomer.

*Apophyse*

*Apophyse* of the *Os Sphænoïdes*, and its under side joins the *Os Palati*.

By what has been said, you see, that the Bones of the Skull and Upper Jaw compose the Orbit of the Eye. The upper part of it is made of the *Os Frontis*; the *Os Unguis* and *Os Planum* make the inner and lower part of the great Angle; and the *Os Sphænoïdes* the inner and lower of the little Angle. The *Os Maxillare* makes the inner and lower part of the Circumference, and the *Os Mali* the outer and lower part.

Let us now briefly recapitulate all the Holes in the Head. They are either External or Internal. The External Holes are, 1. The two in the Coronal Bone above the Orbit, through which a Vein, Artery and a Nerve from the Ophthalmick branch of the fifth Pair passes for the brow and frontal Muscles; this frequently appears only as a Notch. 2. The *Orbiter Internus* in the same Bone within the Orbit, a little above the *Os Planum*, for another branch of the fifth Pair of Nerves which goes to the Nose. 3. Is between the *Os Unguis* and the *Os Maxillare*, in the great *Canthus*, through which the *Ductus Lacrymalis* passes to the Nose. 4. *Orbiter Externus* in the *Os Maxillare* below the

the  
and  
pass  
in th  
whic  
in t  
bran  
to th  
the  
cessu  
whic  
Nerv  
rius  
toriu  
the C  
Bone  
the E  
Sinus  
stoida  
behin  
Verte  
Bone  
gular  
the /  
Th  
Hole  
Holes  
*Os S*  
4. Th  
the th  
and si  
second  
Nerve

the Orbit, through which the Nerves and Vessels which come from the Teeth pass to the Cheek. 5. One single Hole in the same Bone behind the fore-Teeth, which comes from the Nose. 6. Two in the *Os Palati*, through which a branch of the fifth Pair of Nerves passes to the Palate, *Uvula* and Gums. 7. In the Temporal Bone between the *Processus Mastoïdeus* and *Styliformis*, through which the *Portio Dura* of the Auditory Nerve passes. 8. The *Ductus Auditorius Externus*. 9. The *Ductus Auditorius Internus*. 10. The Conduit for the Carotidale Artery. 11. In the same Bone through which a Vein passes from the External Teguments to the Lateral Sinus's ; this is behind the *Processus Mastoïdeus*. 12. In the Occipital Bone behind its *Apophyses*, through which the Vertebral Veins pass. 13. In the same Bone for a branch of the External Jugular. 14. One single large Hole for the *Medulla Spinalis*.

The Internal Holes are, 1. The blind Hole above the *Crista Galli*. 2. The Holes in the *Os Ethmoides*. 3. In the *Os Sphaenoides* for the Optick Nerves. 4. The *Foramen Lacerum*, through which the third, fourth, first branch of the fifth, and sixth Pair of Nerves pass. 5. For the second branch of the fifth Pair of Nerves. 6. For the third branch of the same

same Nerve. 7. The *Foramen Arteria dura Matri*. 8. The Canal through which the Carotidale enters, and the Intercostal passes out, but this we counted amongst the External holes. 9. In the Proces of the *Os Temporum* through which the Auditory Nerve passes. 10. Between the Temporal and Occipital Bones, it is divided in two by the *Dura Mater*, through the one Part passes the eighth Pair of Nerves and the *Nervus Accessorius*; through the other, the Lateral Sinus's open into the Internal Jugulars. 11. One in each side of the large hole of the *Occiput*, through which the ninth Pair of Nerves goes out.

## S E C T. VI.

## Of the Lower Jaw.

THE Lower Jaw is made of one Bone whose Fibres at the Chin, in Children do not ossifie till they are about two Years old. It is composed of two Tables, which are pretty hard and smooth; but betwixt these two *Lamine* it is porous and full of little Cavities; its figure resembles the letter *u*; at each Extremity it has two Processes, the uppermost is called *Corone*; it is thin and broad at its beginning, but

but it ends in a sharp Point, which passing under the *Processus Zygomaticus*, has the Tendon of the Crotaphite Muscle inserted into it. The other which is shorter and lower has a round Head, lined with a Cartilage, which is articulated into the *Sinus* of the *Os Petrosum*; but betwixt the Cartilage which lines the *Sinus*, and that which covers the Head of this Process there is a third, which adheres to the *Ligamentum Annulare* which surrounds this Articulation. The Motion of the Jaw sideways, which is absolutely necessary in chewing, is much facilitated by this loose intervening Cartilage. The lower Edge of this Jaw is called its basis, each end of which is called the Angle of the Lower Jaw.

The Lower Jaw has four holes, two on its inside near its Processes, and two on its outside near its middle. By the Internal holes enter a branch of the fifth pair of Nerves, an Artery from the Carotidales, a Vein passes out to the Jugulars, their branches are spread in the roots of the Teeth. By the External holes these same Vessels pass, and are distributed upon the Chin. It has also Sixteen *Sinus*'s into which the Teeth are set.

## S E C T. VII.

## Of the Teeth.

Of the Substance of the Teeth.

THE Teeth are the hardest and smoothest Bones of the Body; they are formed in the Cavities of the Jaws, which are lined with a thin Membrane, upon which there are several Vessels, through which there passes a thick, viscous, transparent Humour, which, as it increases, hardens in the form of Teeth, which about the seventh or eighth Month after Birth, begin to pierce the edge of the Jaw, tear the *Periosteum* and Gums, which being very sensible create a violent Pain and other Symptoms incident to Children in the time of Tooothing.

The Teeth begin not to appear all at one time; First the *Dentes Incisivi* of the Upper, and then those of the Lower Jaw appear, because they are the thinnest and sharpest. After them come out the *Canini*, because they are sharper than the *Molares*, but thicker than the *Incisivi*; and last of all the *Molares*, because they are the thickest and bluntest. Of this viscous transparent Liquor, which is the Substance of the Teeth, there are two Lays, the one below the other, divided by the same Membrane, which

which covers all the Cavity of the Jaw : The uppermost Lay forms the Teeth which come out first, but about the Seventh Year of Age they are thrust out by the Teeth made of the undermost Lay, which then begin to sprout ; and if these Teeth be lost, they never grow again : but if some have been observed to shed their Teeth twice, they have had three Lays of this viscous Humour. About the One and twentieth Year the two last of the *Molares* spring up, and they are call'd *Dentes Sapientiae*.

The Teeth, which are sometimes *fourteen*, sometimes *fifteen*, and sometimes *sixteen* in each Jaw, are of three sorts, the *Dentes Incisivi*, *Canini*, and *Molares*. The *Incisivi* are the four foremost Teeth in each Jaw, they are pretty broad, sharp at their ends, a little convex outwards, and hollow inwards ; they have each a pretty long Root, which is a little crooked, and which grows small towards its extremity, that the pressure might not be all directly upon one point of the Jaw, but sustained equally by every part which the sides of the Root touch.

The *Canini* are two in each Jaw, one on each side of the *Incisivi* ; they are pretty thick and round, and they end in a sharp point ; they have each one Root, which is longer than the Roots of

## Of the Teeth.

of the *Incisivi*; their proper Use is to pierce the Aliments, because the Fore-Teeth are not only apt to be pulled outwards by the things we hold and break with them, but likewise because they are more subject to blows than the *Molares*, therefore above  $\frac{2}{3}$  of them are contained in their *Alveoli* or Sockets, by which their resistance of all lateral pressures is much greater than that of the *Molares*.

Molares.

The *Molares* ordinarily are ten in each Jaw; they are the thickest and biggest of the Teeth; their Extremities are broad and uneven; and because the pressure upon them is generally perpendicular, therefore they have sometimes two, sometimes three, and sometimes four Roots, which separate a little from one another, that having a broad basis, they may find the greater resistance from the Jaw when they press upon one another in chewing of the Aliments; and the pressure has the less force, seeing the Roots are a little crooked outwards, and not in a straight line under the pressure. The last of the *Molares* are the biggest and hardest, because we ordinarily thrust the hardest bodies farthest into our Mouth; they are nighest the Articulation, because their Use, which is to grind the Aliments small, require the greatest strength.

The

The Roots of the Teeth of the Upper Jaw are all somewhat larger than those of the Under Jaw, because the Upper Jaw is not so strong to resist the pressure of the Teeth as the Lower is.

## S E C T. VIII.

## Of the Spine and Vertebræ.

BY the Spine, we understand that The Number of chain of Bones which reaches from the Vertebræ. the first *Vertebra* of the Neck to the *Os Coccigis*; they are twenty four in number, besides those of the *Os Sacrum*, seven *Vertebrae* of the Neck, twelve of the Back, and five of the Loins; they lie not in a straight line, for those of the Neck bend inwards, those of the Back outwards for enlarging the Cavity of the *Thorax*; those of the Loins bend inwards again, and those of the *Os Sacrum* outwards, to enlarge the Cavity of the Basin.

In each *Vertebra* we distinguish two The Parts of *Vertebrae*, and its the Vertebræ. Processes; the Body is softer and more spongy than the Processes, which are harder and more solid. The forepart of the Body is round and Convex, the hindpart somewhat Concave; its upper and lower sides are plain, each covered with a Cartilage which is pretty thick forwards,

forwards, but thin backwards, by which means we bend our Body forwards ; for the Cartilages yield to the pressure of the Bodies of the *Vertebra*, which in that motion come closer to one another. This could not be effected, if the harder Bodies of the *Vertebrae* were close to one another. Each *Vertebra* has three sorts of Processes towards its hinder part, two transverse or lateral, one on each side ; they are nearer the body of the *Vertebra* than the rest. In each of them there is a Tendon of the Vertebral Muscles inserted. Four Oblique Processes, two on the upper part, and two on the lower, by these the *Vertebrae* are articulated to one another ; and one Acute on the hindmost part of the *Vertebra*.

These Processes, with the hinder or concave part of the body of the *Vertebra*, form a large Hole in each *Vertebra*, and all the Holes answering one another make a Chanel for the descent of the Spinal Marrow, which sends out its Nerves to the several Parts of the Body by Pairs, through two small Holes formed by the joining of four Notches in the sides of each Superior and Inferior *Vertebra*.

*Of the Articulation of the Vertebrae.*

The *Vertebrae* are articulated to one another by a *Ginglymus* ; for the two descending Oblique Processes of each Superior *Vertebra* of the Neck and Back have

have a little dimple in their Extremities, wherein they receive the Extremities of the two ascending oblique Processes of the Inferior *Vertebra*; so that the two ascending Processes of each *Vertebra* of the Neck and Back are received, and the two descending do receive, except the first of the Neck, and last of the Back; but the ascending Processes of each *Vertebra* of the Loins receive, and the two descending are received contrary to those of the Neck and Back.

The *Vertebræ* are all tied together by a hard Membrane made of strong and large Fibres; it covers the Body of all the *Vertebræ* forwards, reaching from the first of the Neck to the *Os Sacrum*: There is another Membrane which lines the Canal, made by the large Hole of each *Vertebra*, which also ties them all together. Besides, the Bodies of each *Vertebra* are tied to one another by the intervening Cartilages and the Tendons of the Muscles, which are inserted in their Processes, tie them together behind.

This Structure of the *Spine* is the very best that can be contrived; for had it been all one Bone, we could have had no motion in our Backs: had it been of two or three Bones articulated for motion, the *Medulla Spinalis* must have been necessarily bruised at every Angle

or Joint ; besides, the whole would not have been so pliable for the several postures we have occasion to put our selves in. If it had been made of several Bones without intervening Cartilages, we should have had no more Use of it, than if it had been but one Bone. If each *Vertebra* had had its own distinct Cartilages, it might have been easily dislocated. And, lastly, The Oblique Processes of each Superiour and Interiour *Vertebra* keep the Middle one that it can neither be thrust backwards nor forwards to compress the *Medulla Spinalis*.

Thus much of the *Vertebra* in general ; but because they are not all alike, we shall therefore descend to a more particular Examination.

of the Vertebræ of the Neck.

The seven *Vertebra* of the Neck differ from the rest in this, that they are smaller and harder. Secondly, That their transverse Processes are perforated for the passage of the Vertebral Vessels. Thirdly, That their acute Processes are forked and straight ; but besides this, the first and second have something peculiar to themselves.

Atlas.

The First, which is called *Atlas*, is tied to the Head, and moves with it upon the Second semi-circularly ; its ascending oblique Processes receive the Tuberles of the *Occiput*, upon which

Articula-

Articulation the Head is only moved forwards and backwards ; and its descending Processes receive the ascending Processes of the second *Vertebra*. It has no acute Process, that it might not hurt the action of the *Musculi Recti* ; but a small Tubercl to which the small Ligament of the Head is inserted. In the forepart of its great Hole it has a pretty large *Sinus*, in which lies the Tooth-like Process of the second *Vertebra*, being fastened by a Ligament that rises from each side of the *Sinus*, that it compress not the *Medulla Spinalis*. It has two small *Sinus*'s in its upper part, in which the tenth Pair of Nerves and the Vertebral Arteries lie.

The Second is call'd *Epistrophæus*, or *Vertebra Dentata*, in the middle between its two oblique ascending Processes ; it has a long and round Process like a Tooth which is received into the fore-said *Sinus*, upon it the Head with the first *Vertebra* turns half round as upon an Axis. The Extremity of this Process is knit to the *Occiput* by a small but strong Ligament. A Luxation of this Tooth is mortal, because it compresses the *Medulla Spinalis*.

*Epistro-  
phæus.*

The Third *Vertebra* is called *Axis* ; *Axis*. and the four following have no name, nor any peculiar difference.

*Of the Vertebræ of the Back.*

The Twelve *Vertebræ* of the Back differ from the rest in this, that they are larger than those of the Neck, and smaller than those of the Loins; their acute Processes slope downwards upon one another: They have in each side of their Bodies a small dimple wherein they receive the round Extremities of the Ribs, and another in their transverse Processes which receives the little Tuberclæ near that Extremity of the Ribs. The Articulation of the twelfth with the first of the Loins is by *Arthrodia*, for both its ascending and descending oblique Processes are received.

*Of the Vertebræ of the Loins.*

The Five *Vertebræ* of the Loins differ from the rest in this, that they are the broadest, and the last of them is the largest of all the *Vertebræ*. Their acute Processes are broader, shorter, and wider from one another, their transverse longer, to support the Bowels, and the Muscles of the Back; they are not perforated as those of the Neck, nor have they a Dimple or *Sinus* as those of the Back. The Cartilages which are betwixt their Bodies are thicker than any of the rest.

*Of the Os Sacrum.*

The *Vertebræ* of the *Os Sacrum* grow so close together in Adults, as that they make but one large and solid Bone of the figure of an *Isosceles* triangle, whose *Basis* is tied to the last *Vertebra* of the Loins,

Loins, and the upper part of its sides to the *Iliæ*, and its Point to the *Os Coccigis*. It is Concave and smooth on its fore-side, but Convex and unequal on its back-side. It hath five Holes on each side, but the Nerves pass only through the five on its fore-side. Its acute Processes or *Spines* are shorter and less than those of the Loins, and the lower is always shorter than the upper.

The *Os Coccigis* is joined to the Extremity of the *Os Sacrum*; it is composed of three or four Bones, of which the lower is still less than the upper, till the last ends in a small Cartilage; it resembles a little Tail turned inwards; its Use is to sustain the straight Gut; it yields to the pressure of the *Fœtus* in Women in Travail, and Midwives use to thrust it backwards, but sometimes rudely and violently, which is the occasion of great Pain, and of several bad Effects.

From what has been said, it is easie to understand how the Motion of the Back is performed: Though each particular *Vertebra* has but a very small Motion, yet the Motion of all is very considerable. We have said, that the Head moves only backwards and forwards upon the first *Vertebra*, and semi-circularly upon the second. The small Protuberance which we have remarked

in the Bone of the hind Head, falling upon another in the first *Vertebra*, stops the Motion of the Head backwards, that it compress not the Spinal Marrow ; and when the Chin touches the *Sternum*, it can move no farther forwards. The Oblique or Semicircular Motions are limited by the Ligament which ties the Proces of the second *Vertebra* to the Head, and by those which tie the first to the second *Vertebra*. The Motion of the other *Vertebra* of the Neck is not so manifest ; yet it is greater than that of the *Vertebra* of the Back, because their acute Proceses are short and straight, and the Cartilages which are between their Bodies thicker. The twelve *Vertebrae* of the Back have the least Motion of any, because their Cartilages are thin, their acute Proceses are long, and very near to one another ; and they are fixed to the Ribs, which neither move forwards nor backwards. But the greatest Motion of the Back is performed by the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, because their Cartilages are thicker, and their acute Proceses are at a greater distance from one another ; for the thicker the Cartilages are, the more we may bend our Body forwards ; and the greater distance there is betwixt the acute Proceses, the more we may bend our selves backward.

This

This is the Structure and Motion of the *Vertebræ*, when they are in their natural Position : but we find them also in several Persons several ways distorted. If the *Vertebræ* of the Back stick out, such as have this Deformity are said to be Bunch-back'd ; and in such the Cartilages which are between the *Vertebræ* are very thin and hard forwards, but considerably thick backwards, where the oblique Processes of the Superiour and Inferiour *Vertebra* are at a considerable distance from one another, which distance fills up with a viscous Substance. This inequality of the thickness of the Cartilages happens either by a relaxation or weakness of the Ligaments and Muscles which are fasten'd to the backside of the *Vertebræ*, in which case their Antagonists finding no opposition, remain in a continual contraction, and consequently there can be no Motion in these *Vertebrae*. If this Deformity has been from the Womb, then the Bones being at that time soft and tender, the Bodies of the *Vertebræ* partake of the same inequality as the Cartilages. If the bunch be towards one Shoulder, for example, towards the right, then the Cartilages on that side are very thick, but thin and dry on the other side ; on the left side the oblique *Apophyses* come close together, but on the

right there is a considerable distance betwixt them ; and the Ligaments and Muscles are greatly extended on the right side, but those on the left are as much contracted. If the *Vertebræ* are distorted inwards, all things have a different face : The Cartilages, and sometimes the *Vertebræ* are very thick forwards, but mighty thin and hard backwards : The acute and oblique Processes are very close to one another, and the Ligaments upon the Bodies of the *Vertebræ* are greatly relaxed, but the Muscles and Ligaments which tie the Processes together are very much contracted. These Distortions seldom happen in the *Vertebræ* of the Loins ; but such as are so miserable, have little or no Motion of their Back.

## S E C T. IX.

Of the *Offa Innominata*.

THE *Offa Innominata* are two large Bones situated on the sides of the *Os Sacrum* ; in a *Fætus* they may be each separated into three pieces, which in Adults unite and make but one Bone, in which they distinguish three Parts. The first and Superiour Part is call'd *Os Ilium* ; the Intestine *Ileum* lieth between it and its fellow. It is very large,

large, almost of a Semicircular figure, a little Convex and uneven on its External side, which is called its *Dorsum*, and Concave and smooth on its Internal side, which is call'd its *Costa*. Its Circumference or Edge is call'd its *Spine*. It is joined to the sides of the three Superior *Vertebrae* of the *Os Sacrum* by a true Suture: It is larger in Women than in Men.

The second is the *Os Pubis*, which is *Os Pubis*, the Inferior and Forepart of the *Os Innominatum*; 'tis united to its fellow of the other side by an intervening Cartilage, by which means it makes the forepart of the *Pelvis* or Basin, of which the *Os Sacrum* is the backpart, and the *Iia* the sides.

The third is the Inferior and Posterior, *Os Ischium*, call'd *Ischium* or *Coxendix*; it has a large Cavity call'd *Acetabulum Coxendicis*, which receives the head of the Thigh-Bone; the Circumference of this Cavity is ript with a Cartilage call'd its *Supercilium*, where it joins the *Os Pubis*; it has a large Hole call'd *Furamen Ischij & Pubis*, about the Circumference of which the Muscles called *Obturator Internus* and *Externus* arise. And at its lower end it has a large Protuberance upon which we sit, and from whence the benders of the Leg arise. And a little above this, upon its

hinder part, it has another small acute Process, betwixt which and the former Protuberance lies the *Sinus* of the *Ischium*, through which the Tendon of the *Obturator Internus* passes.

## S E C T. X.

## Of the Ribs.

*Coffet.* **T**HERE are four and twenty Ribs, twelve on each side of the twelve *Vertebrae* of the Back; they are crooked, and like to the Segments of Circles; they grow flat and broad as they approach the *Sternum*, but the nearer they are to the *Vertebra* they are the rounder and thicker, at which end they have a round head, which being covered with a Cartilage, is received into the *Sinus* in the bodies of the *Vertebrae*; and at the neck of each head (except the two last Ribs) there is a small Tubercl, which is also received into the *Sinus* of the transverse Processes of these same *Vertebrae*. The Ribs thus articulated, make an acute Angle with the Lower *Vertebrae*.

The Ribs have each a small Canal or *Sinus*, which runs along their under sides, in which lies a Nerve, Vein, and Artery. Their Extremities, which are fastened to the *Sternum*, are Cartilaginous,

ginous, and the Cartilages make an obtuse Angle with the bony part of the Rib ; this Angle respects the Head. The Cartilages are harder in Women than in Men, that they may the better bear the weight of their Breasts.

The Ribs are of two sorts ; the seven upper are call'd *Costæ Verae*, because their Cartilaginous ends are received into the *Sinus* of the *Sternum*. The five lower are call'd *False*, because they are shorter and softer, of which only the first is joined to the Extremity of the *Sternum*, the Cartilaginous Extremities of the rest are tied to one another, thereby leaving greater space for the dilatation of the Stomach and Intrals. The last of these False Ribs is shorter than all the rest ; it is not tied to them, but sometimes to the Midriff, and sometimes to the *Musculus Obligatus Descendens*.

If the Ribs had been articulated with the Bodies of the *Vertebrae* at right Angles, the Cavity of the *Thorax* could never have been enlarg'd in breathing. If each Rib had been a rigid Bone articulated at both ends to two fix'd points, the whole Chest had been immoveable. If the Ribs had not been articulated to the Transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae*, the *Sternum* could not have been thrust out to that degree it is now, or the Cavity

Cavity of the *Thorax* could not have increased so much as is requisite in Inspiration. For when the Ribs are pulled up by the Intercostal Muscles, the Angle which the Cartilages at the *Sternum* make with the bony part of the Rib must be increased, and consequently its Subtense, or the distance between the *Sternum* and the Transverse Processes, lengthened. Now, because the Rib cannot move beyond the Transverse Process, upon the account of its Articulation with it; therefore the *Sternum* must either be thrust to the other side, or else outwards. It cannot move to the other side, because of an equal pressure upon the same account there, and therefore it is thrust outwards, or the distance between the *Sternum* and the *Vertebra* is increased. The last Ribs, which do not reach the *Sternum*, and consequently conduces nothing in this action, are not articulated with the Transverse Processes.

If we suppose the Cavity of the *Thorax* to be half a Sphæroide, whose Semy-Axis is the height of the *Thorax*, or 15 Inches, and the Diameter of its greatest Circle 12 Inches, then the Cavity of the *Thorax* contains 1130 Cubick Inches. But in an easie Inspiration the *Sternum* is raised  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an Inch, (as I am assured by an exact

Experi-

Experiment) upon which account the Cavity of the *Thorax* is encreased to 1150 Cubick Inches. To this if we add the space the *Diaphragma* leaves, which is the Segment of a Sphere, whose Diameter is 15 Inches, and the Solidity of the Segment 183 Inches, we shall have 22 Inches more, if the *Diaphragma* descends but one Inch; but if it descends an Inch and an half, it leaves room for 52 Inches of Air to enter; and if it descends 2 Inches, the Cavity of the *Thorax* will be encreased upon the account of the motion of the *Diaphragma* alone 86 Inches. So that in the least Inspiration we can fairly suppose, the Lungs are distended with 42 Inches of Air, and they may be sometimes with above 70 or 100.

## S E C T. XI.

*Of the Breast-Bone.*

THE *Sternum* or Breast-Bone is situated in the middle of the Breast; it is composed of seven or eight Bones in Infants, which at first are Cartilaginous, but which harden and unite into three Bones after they are seven years old: The Substance of these Bones is not solid, but somewhat spon-  
Sternum.

The

*Of the Breast-Bone.*

The first and uppermost Bone is the biggest and largest ; it is uneven and rough on its outside, but smoother on its inside, where it has a shallow furrow which gives way for the descent of the Wind-Pipe. It has a *Sinus* lined with a Cartilage on each side of its upper end, wherein it receives the Heads of the *Clavicularia*.

The second is longer and narrower than the first, and on its sides there are several *Sinus's*, in which the Cartilaginous ends of the Ribs are received.

The third is shorter, but broader than the second ; it receives into the Lateral *Sinus's* the Extremities of the last true Ribs ; it terminates into a Cartilage which hardens sometimes into a Bone, call'd *Cartilago Xiphoides*, or *Ensi-formis*, because it is broad at its upper end, where it joins the third Bone, and grows narrower to its Extremity, where it is sometimes forked, and sometimes it bends inwards, compresses the upper Orifice of the Stomach, and causes a great Pain and Vomiting.

The Use of the *Sternum* is to defend the Heart, and to receive the Extremities of the true Ribs.

S E C T.

## S E C T. XII.

## Of the Claviculæ and Scapulæ.

THE *Clavicula* or *Chanel-Bones* Claviculae, are two in number, situated at the basis of the Neck, above the Breast, one on each side; they are pretty long and small; at one end they are joined to the Production of the *Scapula*, called *Acromion*, by the Articulation called *Synchondrosis* at the other end, to the upper end of the *Sternum* by the Articulation call'd *Arthrodia*; they are crooked like an Italian (ſ) for the passage of the Vessels which pass under them, and to facilitate the motion of the Arms.

Their Substance is Spongious, therefore they are the more easily broken, and the sooner united when broken: Their Use is to sustain the *Scapula* to which the Arms are articulated. And because the Pectoral Muscle which pulls the Arm a-cross the Breast, is inserted near the upper end of the *Humerus* Bone; therefore if the *Clavicula* did not keep the *Scapula*, to which the Head of the *Humerus* is joined always at an equal distance from the *Sternum*, the upper part of the Arm, and not the Hand, must have been pulled forwards.

The

Scapulæ.

The *Scapula*, Ουπλάτα, or Shoulder-blades, are two large and broad Bones, like the Triangle call'd *Scalenum*; they are situated on each side of the upper and back part of the *Thorax*. The Substance of the *Scapula* is thin, but solid and firm; its outside is somewhat Convex, and its inside Concave; its upper edge is call'd *Costa Superior*, and its lower *Costa Inferior*; its broad end is called its *Basis*, which, with the two edges, make the upper and lower Angles. They have each three Processes, of which the first runs all along the middle of their outside, and 'tis called their *Spine*. That end of the *Spine* which receives the Extremity of the *Clavicula* is call'd *Acromion*. The second Process is a little lower than the *Acromion*; 'tis short and sharp like a Crow's Bill, therefore call'd *Caracoides*; these two Processes are tied to one another by a strong Ligament which serves to keep the Head of the *Humerus* in the Cavity of the third Process, which is call'd *Cervix*. This Process is the Extremity of the *Scapula*, which is opposite to its *Basis*. It has a round *Sinus*, tipt about its brim with a Cartilage which receives the Head of the *Humerus*.

The Use of the *Scapula* is to receive the Extremities of the *Clavicula* and *Humerus*,

*Humerus*, for the easier motion of the Arm, and to give a rise to the Muscles which move the Arm.

S E C T. XIII.

Of the Bones of the Arm and Hand.

THE first Bone of the Arm is the *Humerus*, or Shoulder-Bone ; 'tis long and round, its Substance or Fibres are pretty solid and compact ; it has a pretty wide and long Cavity in its middle, in which is contained its Marrow. At its upper end it has a round Head covered with a Cartilage, which is received into the Cavity of the Neck of the *Scapula*. In the forepart of the Head there is a Chanel in which a Tendon of the *Biceps* lies ; but because this Head is much larger than the Cavity, therefore there is a strong Ligament which rises from the edge of the Cavity of the *Scapula*, and forming a Bag round the Head of the *Humerus*, is inserted between the *Epiphysis* and the Bone. Thus the Articulation of the *Humerus* with the *Scapula* is an *Artrodia* or Ball and Socket, that the Arm might have all manner of motions. But the greatest part of the Socket is made of a Ligament : For though the Joint would have been stronger if the Cavity

Cavity had been all of Bone ; yet the Neck of the *Humerus* being large and strong, the Compass of the Arm must have been very small. The lower end of the *Humerus*, which is thinner and broader than the other, has two Protuberances. The External is received into the Extremity of the *Radius* ; from the Internal the Muscles which bend the Fingers and Hand arise ; and between these two Protuberances there are two small semicircular Risings, with a middle Chanel, by which the *Humerus* is joined to the *Ulna* by a *Ginglymus*. On the foreside of these Protuberances there is a small *Sinus* which receives the fore Process of the *Ulna* ; and on the backside there is another large *Sinus* which receives the *Olecranon*.

## Ulna.

The *Ulna* or *Cubitus* is a long and hard Bone with a Cavity in its middle ; it lies on the inside of the fore-Arm, reaching from the Elbow to the Wrist ; it is big at its upper end, and grows smaller to its lower end. At its upper it has two Processes which are received into the fore and hind *Sinus*'s of the Extremity of the *Humerus* : The foremost Process is small and short ; the hindmost, call'd 'Ολέκρανον, is bigger and longer ; it stays the fore-Arm when it comes to a straight line with the Arm. Betwixt these Processes it has a semi-circular

circular *Sinus*, which receives the inner Protuberance of the lower end of the *Humerus*, upon which we bend and extend our fore-Arm. And along the middle of that there runs a small ridge by which this Bone is articulated to the *Humerus* by *Ginglymus*. Had the Articulation here been an *Arthrodia*, the Joint must have been much weaker, but the Hand could have received no more motion from it than it has now from the Shoulder.

The inside of this upper end has a small *Sinus* which receives the Circumference of the round Head of the *Radius*. Its lower Extremity, which is round and small, is received into a *Sinus* in the lower end of the *Radius*, and upon this Extremity it has a short and small Proceſs, from which the Ligaments which tie it to the Bones of the Wrist arise; this Proceſs serves to keep the Bones of the Wrist in their place.

The *Radius* is another Bone of the fore-Arm, which accompanies the *Ulna* from the Elbow to the Wrist; in its upper end it has a small Cavity which receives the outer Protuberance of the *Humerus*. The Circumference of this Cavity rouls in the small *Sinus* in the upper end of the *Ulna*. Near its lower end, which is bigger than its upper, it has a little *Sinus* which receives the end

Radius.

end of the *Ulna*, and in its Extremity it has two *Sinu's* which receive the Bones of the Wrist. Although the *Ulna* and the *Radius* accompany one another, yet they touch not but at their Extremities. They bend from one another in their middle, but they are tied together by a strong and broad membranous Ligament.

The upper end of the *Ulna* is the biggest, because upon it and not upon the *Radius* the Articulation at the Elbow is performed ; but the lower end of the *Radius* is biggest, because upon it only the Hand is articulated. The *Radius* moves either backwards or forwards upon the *Ulna*, by which means the Palm of the Hand is turned either upwards or downwards, which two Motions are called *Pronation* and *Supination*. Nor could any other Articulation have given these two Motions to the Hand ; for though an *Arthrodia* admits of a motion to every side, yet we cannot by that turn the forepart of our Arm backwards ; and how useless our Hands had been without these Motions, every one may easily perceive.

*The Bones of the Carpus.*

The *Carpus* or Wrist is made up of eight little Bones of a different figure and bigness ; they are placed in two ranks, four in each rank. The first

rank

rank is articulated with the *Radius*. The second with the Bones of the *Metacarpus*. The last little Bone of the first rank lies not at the side of the third, which answers to the Bone of the *Metacarpus* of the Little Finger, as all the rest do by one another, but it lies upon it ; they are strongly tied together by the Ligaments which come from the *Radius*, and by the annular Ligament, through which the Tendons which move the Fingers pass. Although this Ligament be thought but one, yet it gives a particular case to every Tendon which passes through it.

The *Metacarpus* is made up of four The Bones of the Metacarpus. Bones which answer the four Fingers ; that which sustains the Fore-finger is the biggest and longest ; they are round and long, a little Convex and round towards the Back of the Hand, and Concave and plain towards the Palm. They are hollow in their middle and full of Marrow ; they touch one another only at their Extremities, leaving spaces in their middle, in which lie the *Musculi Interossei*. In their upper end there is a *Sinus* which receives the Bones of the Wrist, and their lower Extremity is round, and is received into the *Sinus* of the first Bones of the Fingers.

The Bones of the Fingers and Thumb The Bones of the Fingers. are fifteen in each Hand, three to each Finger ;

Finger; they are a little Convex and round towards the Back of the Hand, but hollow and plain towards the Palm, except the last where the Nails are. The order of their disposition is called First, Second and Third *Phalanx*. The First is longer than the Second, and the Second than the Third. The upper Extremity of the First Bone of each Finger has a little *Sinus* which receives the round Head of the Bones of the *Metacarpus*. The upper Extremity of the Second and Third Bones of each Finger hath two small *Sinus*'s parted by a little Protuberance; and the lower Extremity of the first and second Bones of each Finger has two Protuberances, divided by a small *Sinus*. The two Protuberances are received into the two *Sinus*'s of the upper Extremity of the second and third Bones; and the small *Sinus* receives the little Protuberance of the same end of these same Bones. The first Bone of the Thumb is like to the Bones of the *Metacarpus*, and it is joined to the Wrist and second of the Thumb, as they are to the Wrist and first of the Fingers. The second Bone of the Thumb is like the first Bones of the Fingers, and it is joined to the first and third, as they are to the Bones of the *Metacarpus*, and second of the Fingers. The Fingers are moved

moved side-ways only upon their first Joint.

Besides these Bones, there are some *Offa Sesamoidea*, small ones call'd *Offa Sesamoidea*, because they resemble the Grains of *Sesamum*, they are reckoned about twelve in each Hand ; they are placed at the Joints of the Fingers, under the Tendons of the *Flexores Digitorum*, to which they serve as so many Pulleys.

#### S E C T. XIV.

##### Of the Bones of the Thighs, Legs, and Feet.

THE Thigh has only one Bone, which is the longest of all the Bones of the Body ; its Fibres are close and hard ; it has a Cavity in its middle ; 'tis a little Convex and round on its foreside, but a little hollow, with a long and small ridge call'd *Linea Aspera* on its backside. At its upper end it has three *Epiphyses* which separate easily in Children.

The first is its Extremity, which is a large and round Head covered with a Cartilage, which is received into the *Acetabulum Coxendicis*, wherein it is tied by two Ligaments. The first is pretty large, and comes from the edge of the *Acetabulum*. The second is round and

and short, it comes from the bottom of the *Acetabulum*, and is inserted into the middle of the round Head : The Part immediately below this round Head, which is small, long, and a little oblique, is call'd its Neck. It makes an Angle with the Body of the Bone, by which means the Thighs and Feet are kept at a distance from one another, and we stand firmer, the *Linea Propensionis* easily falling perpendicular upon any part of the quadrangular space between the Feet. Besides, this obliquity of the Neck of the Bone it conduces much to the strength of the Muscles of the Thigh, which must have otherwise pass'd very near to the Center of Motion.

Trochanter  
Major.

The second is call'd *Trochanter Major* ; it is a pretty big Protuberance on the External side of the Thigh-Bone, just at the root of the Neck ; it is rough, because of the insertion of some Muscles into it. It has a small dent at its root, into which the *Musculi Quadragemini* and the *Obturatores* are inserted.

Trochanter  
Minor.

The third is call'd *Trochanter Minor* ; it is on the hind-side of the Thigh-Bone, a little lower and less than the other. These Protuberances encrease mightily the force of the Muscles, by removing not only their Insertions, but likewise their Directions from the Center of Motion.

The

The lower Extremity of the Thigh-Bone, which is articulated with the *Tibia* by *Ginglymus*, is divided in the middle by a *Sinus* into two Heads or Protuberances, the External and the Internal, which are received into the upper *Sinus's* of the *Tibia*. Through the space which is between the hind-parts of these two Heads pass the great Vessels and Nerve which go to the Leg; because the upper end of the Thigh-Bone was articulated by an *Arthrodia*, that we might not only move our Legs backwards or forwards, but likewise nearer to, or farther from one another; therefore its lower Extremity was joined to the *Tibia* by *Ginglymus*, which is the strongest Articulation.

In the Knee there is a little round Patella. Bone about two Inches broad, pretty thick, a little convex on both sides, covered with a smooth Cartilage on its foreside; it is soft in Children, but very hard in those of riper Years; it is called *Mola*, *Patella*, or *Pan*; over it pass the Tendons of the Muscles which extend the Leg, to which it serves as a Pulley for facilitating their Motion, by removing their Direction from the Centre of Motion.

In the Leg there are two Bones, the Tibia. inner and bigger is call'd *Tibia*, or *Focile Majus*; 'tis hard and firm, with a

M

Cavity

Cavity in its middle ; 'tis almost triangular ; its fore and sharp edge is call'd the Shin. In its upper Extremity it has two large *Sinus's* tipt with a soft and supple Cartilage call'd *Cartilago Lunata* from its figure : It runs in between the Extremities of the two Bones, and becomes very thin at its edge. Like those in the Articulation of the Lower Jaw, it facilitates a small side-motion in the Knee. The *Sinus's* receive the two Protuberances of the Thigh-Bone, and the Production which is between the *Sinus's* of the *Tibia* is received in the *Sinus* which divides these two Protuberances of the *Femur*. By bending our Knee, we bring our Leg, in walking in a straight line, towards, which without this Articulation we could not have done, but, like those who have the misfortune to have a Wooden Leg, we must have brought our Foot about in a semicircle in going even upon a Plain, but more evidently upon an Ascent.

On the side of this upper end it has a small Knob, which is received into a small *Sinus* of the *Fibula* ; and on its fore-part, a little below the *Patella*, it has another, into which the Tendons of the Extensors of the Leg are inserted. Its lower Extremity, which is much smaller than its upper, has a remarkable Process

Process which forms the inner Ankle, and a pretty large *Sinus* divided in the middle by a small Protuberance ; the *Sinus* receives the convex Head of the *Astragalus*, and the Protuberance is received into the *Sinus*, in the convex Head of the same Bone. It has another shallow *Sinus* in the side of its lower end, which receives the *Fibula*.

The outer and lesser Bone is called *Fibula*.  
*Neckn*, *Fibula*, or *Focile Minus* ; though it be much smaller than the *Tibia*, yet 'tis nothing shorter. It lies in the outside of the Leg ; and its upper end, which is not so high as the Knee, receives the lateral knob of the upper end of the *Tibia* into a small *Sinus* which it has in its inner side. Its lower end is received into the small *Sinus* of the *Tibia*, and then it extends into a large Process which forms the outer Ankle, embracing the external side of this *Astragalus*. The *Tibia* and *Fibula* touch not one another but at their ends ; the space which they leave in their middle is filled up by a strong membranous Ligament, and some Muscles which extend the Feet and Toes.

In the Foot we distinguish three Parts, the *Tarsus*, *Metatarsus*, and *Toes*.

The *Tarsus* is the space between the *Bones of the Leg* and the *Metatarsus* ; the *Tarsus* are composed of seven Bones. *The Talus*.

Astragalus. The first is call'd the *Astragalus* or *Talus*. In its upper part it has a convex Head, which is articulated with the two Fociles of the Leg by a *Ginglymus*, being it is divided by a little *Sinus* which receives the small Protuberance in the middle of the *Sinus* of the *Tibia*. And without this Articulation, we must always, in going, have trod upon the Heel with our fore Foot, and upon our Toes with our hind Foot. The fore part of the *Astragalus*, which is also convex, is received into the *Sinus* of the *Os Naviculare*. Below, towards the hind-part of its under side, it has a pretty large *Sinus* which receives the upper and hind part of the *Os Calcis*. But towards the fore part of the same side it has a Protuberance, which is received into the upper and fore part of the same Bone. Betwixt this *Sinus* and this Protuberance there is a Cavity which answers to another in the *Os Calcis*, in which is contained an oily and mucous sort of Substance for moistening the Ligaments, and facilitating the obscure Motion of these Bones when we go.

Calcaneum. The second Bone of the *Tarsus* is the *Calcanum, Os Calcis*, or Heel-Bone, it is the biggest of the Bones of the *Tarsus*. It lies under the *Astragalus*, to which it is articulated by *Ginglymus*, as we have now

now described. Behind it has a large Protuberance which makes the Heel, and into which the *Tendo Achillis* is inserted ; and before it has a Cavity which receives a part of the *Os Cuneiforme*.

The third is the *Os Naviculare* or *Naviculare Cymbiforme* ; it lies between the *Astragalus* and the three *Ossa Cuneiformia*. Behind it has a large *Sinus*, which receives the fore convex Head of the first ; and before it is convex, distinguished into three Heads, which are received into the *Sinus's* of the *Ossa Cuneiformia*.

The fourth, fifth and sixth are called *Ossa Cuneiformia*, because they are large above, and narrow below ; they lie all three at the side of one another ; their upper side is convex, and their under hollow, by which means the Muscles and Tendons in the Sole of the Foot are not hurt when we go. At one end they have each a *Sinus*, which receives the *Os Naviculare*, and at the other end they are joined to the three inner Bones of the *Metatarsus* ; the inmost of these Bones is the biggest, and that in the middle the least.

The seventh Bone is called the *Os Cubiforme*, because of its figure ; it lies in the same rank with the *Ossa Cuneiformia*. Behind it is joined to the *Os*

*Calcis*, before to the two outer Bones of the *Metatarjus*, and on its inside it is joined to the third *Os Cuneiforme*.

*Metatarfus.*

The Bones of the *Metatarfus* are five; that which sustains the Great-Toe is the thickest, and that which sustains the next Toe is the longest; the rest grow each shorter than another. They are longer than the Bones of the *Metatarfus*; in other things they are like them, and they are articulated to the Toes, as they are to the Fingers.

*The Bones of the Toes.*

The Bones of the Toes are fourteen. The Great-Toe hath two, and the rest have each three; they are like to the Bones of the Fingers, only they are shorter.

In the Toes there are sometimes found twelve *Osse Sessamoidea*, as in the Fingers.

### S E C T. XV.

#### Of the Nails, and Number of the Bones.

THE Nails which are upon the Extremities of the Fingers and Toes, seem to be of the same Nature as the Hoofs of other Animals. If you take the Hoof carefully off a Horse, Ox, or Hog, you shall see that it is nothing but a bundle of small Husks which answer to so many *Papille* of the Skin.

From

From whence we may conclude, that the Nails are nothing but the covers or sheaths of the *Papille Pyramidales* of the Skin on the Extremities of Fingers and Toes, which dry, harden, and lie close upon one another: Their Use is to defend the Ends of the Fingers when we handle any hard or rugged body.

The Bones of a Skeleton, are,

<i>The Os Frontis</i>	1
<i>Occipitis</i>	1
<i>Offa Parietalia</i>	2
<i>Temporum</i>	2
<i>Officula Auditus</i>	8
<i>Os Ethmoides</i>	1
<i>Sphœnoides</i>	1
<i>Mali</i>	2
<i>Maxillare</i>	2
<i>Unguis</i>	2
<i>Nasi</i>	2
<i>Palati</i>	2
<i>Vomer</i>	1
<i>Maxilla Inferior</i>	1
<i>Dentes Incisivi</i>	8
<i>Canini</i>	4
<i>Molares</i>	20
<i>Os Hyoides</i>	1
	—
	61
	—

STAND.

M. 4.

Vertebra

<i>Vertebra Cervicis</i>	7
<i>Dorsi</i>	12
<i>Lumborum</i>	5
<i>Ossis Sacri</i>	6
<i>Os Coccygis</i>	3
<i>Scapulae</i>	2
<i>Claviculae</i>	2
<i>Costa</i>	24
<i>Sternum</i>	1
<i>Ossa Innominata</i>	2
	<u>64</u>

<i>The Humerus</i>	2
<i>Ulna</i>	2
<i>Radius</i>	2
<i>Ossa Carpi</i>	16
<i>Metacarpi</i>	8
<i>Digitorum</i>	30
	<u>60</u>

<i>The Os Femuris</i>	2
<i>Rotulae</i>	2
<i>Tibia</i>	2
<i>Fibula</i>	2
<i>Ossa Tarsi</i>	14
<i>Metatarsi</i>	10
<i>Digitorum</i>	28
	<u>60</u>

In all 245

Besides the *Ossa Sesamoidea*, which are said to be found to the Number of 48.

C H A P.

**C H A P. VI.**  
**Of the Muscles which are not yet**  
**described.**

**S E C T. I.** *Two or three*

**Of the Muscles of the Face.**

**T**HE Eye-brows have each a Muscle call'd *Corrugata*. It arises from the great *Canthus* of the Orbit, and terminates in the Skin about the middle of the Eye-brows. Some reckon this Pair only a Prolongation of the *Frontales*; their Name declares their Use.

The Nose has three Muscles. The first arises from the upper end of the two Bones of the Nose, and are inserted into the upper part of the *Alæ*. They pull the Nose upwards.

The second Pair arise from the *Os Maxillare*, and are inserted into the sides of the *Alæ*. They dilate the Nostrils.

The third Pair arises from the same Bone, above the *Dentes Incisorij*, and are inserted into the Extremities of the *Alæ*, which they pull downwards.

The Muscles of the Lips are five Proper Pair.

*Of the Muscles of the Face.*

The *Incisivus*, or *Elevator Labii Superioris*; it arises from the upper part of the fourth Bone of the Upper Jaw, and descending obliquely is inserted into the Upper Lip above the *Dentes Incisorij*.

Its Antagonist is the *Triangularis*, or *Depressor Labii Superioris*; it ariseth from the lower edge of the Lower Jaw, between the *Massater* and the *Quadratus*, and ascendeth by the Angle of the Mouth to the Upper Lip.

The *Caninus*, or *Elevator Labii Inferioris*; it ariseth from the fourth Bone of the Upper Jaw, below the *Incisivus*; it descends and passes under the Insertion of the *Zygomaticus*, and is inserted into the Under Lip. This Muscle is assisted by another small but strong Pair of Muscles, first observed by Mr. *Copper*, and by him call'd *Elevator Labii Inferioris*: They arise from the Gums of the *Dentes Incisorii*, and descending directly, are inserted into the lower part of the Skin of the Chin. When they act, they pull the Skin of the Chin, and consequently thrust the Lower Lip upwards.

Its Antagonist is the *Quadratus*, or *Depressor Labii Inferioris*; this is some thin, fleshy Fibres, which lie immediate under the Skin, upon the Chin, on each side of the former; they arise from the edge of the forepart of the Under

Under Jaw, and are inserted into the Upper Lip.

There are three Muscles common to both the Lips.

The first and the second are *Zygomatici*, one on each side ; they come from the *Os Zygoma*, and going obliquely they are inserted near the Angles of the Lips. When one of these Muscles acteth, it draws both Lips obliquely to a side ; they receive often some Fibres from the *Caninus*.

The third is the *Orbicularis*, or *Sphincter Labiorum* ; it surrounds the Lips with Orbicular Fibres ; when it acteth, it draws the Lips together.

There is one Muscle on each side common to the Lips and Cheeks, which is the *Buccinator* ; it lies under the other Muscles ; it makes the inner Substance of the Cheeks ; its Fibres run from the *Processus Corone* of the Lower Jaw to the Angle of the Mouth, and they adhere to the upper part of the Gums of both Jaws. Through its middle pass the upper *Ductus Salivales* ; by this Muscle we contract the Cavity of our Mouth, and thrust the Meat between our Teeth.

The Muscles of the Lower Jaw are twelve Pair, six on each side.

The first is the *Temporalis*, or *Crotaphites* ; it arises by a semicircular fleshy

begin-

beginning from a part of the *Os Frontis*, from the lower part of the *Parietale*, and upper part of the *Temporale*. From thence they go under the *Zygoma*, and gathering together as to their Centre, they are inserted by a short but strong Tendon into the *Processus Corone* of the Lower Jaw.

The second is the *Massater*; it is a thick and short Muscle; it arises from the *Zygoma*, and from the first Bone of the Upper Jaw, and is inserted into the lower edge of the Lower Jaw, from its External Angle to its middle. Its Fibres run in three Directions; those which come from the *Zygoma* run obliquely to the middle of the Jaw; and those from the first Bone of the Upper Jaw cross the former, and run to the Angle of the Lower Jaw; and the Fibres which are in its middle run in a perpendicular from their Origin to their Insertion. These two Muscles pull the Jaw upwards.

The third is the *Pterigoidæus Internus*; it arises from the internal part of the *Processus Pterigoidæus*, and descends to be inserted into the inferior part of the internal side of the Lower Jaw, near its Angle: When this Muscle acteth, it draweth the Jaw to a side.

The fourth is the *Pterigoidæus Externus*; it ariseth from the external part of the same Process, and goes backwards

to

to be inserted between the *Processus Condiloides* and the *Corone* on the inside of the Lower Jaw. This Muscle pulleth the Lower Jaw forwards.

The fifth is the *Quadratus*; this is a broad, membranous Muscle, which lies immediately under the Skin; it ariseth from the upper part of the *Sternum*, from the *Clavicula*, and from the *Acromium*; it covereth all the Neck, and adheres firmly to the lower edge of the Lower Jaw; and being produced, it covers also the lower part of the Cheeks. When this Muscle acteth, it pulleth the Cheeks and Jaw downwards.

The sixth is the *Digastricus*; it ariseth fleshy from the upper part of the *Processus Mastoidaeus*, and descending it contracts into a round Tendon, which passes through the *Sylohyoidaeus*, and an annular Ligament which is fix'd to the *Os Hyoides*; then it grows fleshy again, and ascends to the middle of the edge of the Lower Jaw, where it is inserted. When this Muscle acteth, it pulleth the Lower Jaw down, by help of the annular Pulley, which alters its Direction.

S E C T.

## S E C T. II.

## Of the Muscles of the Head.

THE Head is lifted up or pulled backwards by four Pair of Muscles.

The first is the *Splenius*, which ariseth from the four upper Spines of the *Vertebrae* of the Back, and from the two lower of the Neck ; and ascending obliquely, it adheres to the upper transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, and is inserted into the upper part of the *Occiput*.

The second is the *Complexus* ; it ariseth from the transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, and ascending obliquely it adheres to the Spines of the same *Vertebra*, and is inserted into the *Occiput* : When one of these Muscles acteth, it moves the Head backwards to one side.

The third is the *Rectus Major* ; it ariseth from the Spine of the second *Vertebra* of the Neck, and is inserted into the lower part of the *Occiput*.

The fourth is the *Rectus Minor* ; it lies under the *Major* ; it cometh from the back-part of the first *Vertebra* of the Neck, and is inserted below the former : They nod the Head backwards.

The

The semicircular motion of the Head is performed by

The *Obliquus Inferior*, which comes from the Spine of the second *Vertebra* of the Neck, and is inserted into the transverse Process of the first.

The *Obliquus Superior* comes from the transverse Process of the first *Vertebra* of the Neck, and is inserted into the lateral and inferior part of the *Occiput*.

The *Mastoidaeus* arises fleshy from the upper part of the *Sternum* and extremity of the *Clavicula*; and ascending obliquely, 'tis inserted into the back-part of the *Processus Mammillaris*. When either of these Muscles acteth, the Head turneth to the contrary side.

The Head is bent forwards by

The *Rectus Internus Major*, which arises from the forepart of the five inferior transverse Processes of the *Vertebra* of the Neck, and is inserted into the foremost *Appendix* of the *Occipital Bone*, near its great hole.

The *Rectus Internus Minor*, observed and described by that accurate Anatomist Mr. Comper, in his most exact Treatise of the Muscles; it lies on the forepart of the first *Vertebra*, like the *Rectus Minor* on the back part, and is inserted into the *Anterior Appendix* of the *Os Occipitis* immediately under the former. These nod the Head forwards,

wards, being Antagonists to the *Recti Minores*.

*Fallopis* has described another Pair, called *Recti Laterales*, which come from the transverse Processes of the first *Vertebra*, and are inserted near the *Processus Mammillaris*; they help to move the Head a little to one side.

### S E C T. III.

#### Of the Muscles of the Neck.

THE Neck is bended and extended; it is bended by two Pair of Muscles.

The first is the *Longus*, which is fastened to the bodies of the five upper *Vertebrae* of the Back, and to all those of the Neck; but because the last are more moveable than the first, therefore they are its Insertion, and those of the Back its Origination.

The *Scalenus* arises from the first and second Ribs; and ascending, is inserted into all the transverse Processes of the Neck, except the first. This Muscle seems to be three; yet I will not increase their number. It is perforated for the passage of the Veins, Arteries, and Nerves; because the Neck is more easily moved than that part of the Ribs to which they are fastened; therefore

it's justly reckon'd amongst the Benders of the Neck.

The Neck is extended by the *Musculi Vertebrales*, of which afterwards.

S E C T. IV.

Of the Muscles of the Scapula.

THE Scapula is moved backwards and forwards, upwards and downwards, by four Muscles.

The first is, the *Serratus Minor Anticus*; it ariseth thin and fleshy, from the second, third, fourth and fifth Superior Ribs, and ascending obliquely, it is inserted fleshy into the *Processus Caro-coides* of the *Scapula*, which it draws forwards; it helps also in Respiration.

The second is the *Trapezius*, or *Cucullaris*, because with its fellow it represents a Cowl; it arises from the *Oc-ciput* above the *Splenius*, from the Spines of the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, and from the eighth Superior of the Back, and is inserted into the Spine of the *Scapula* to the *Acromium* and *Clavicle*: It moves the *Scapula* obliquely upwards, directly backwards, and obliquely downwards, according to the three Directions of its Fibres.

The third is the *Rhomboides*, so called from its figure; it lies under the *Cucullaris*;

*laris*; it ariseth from the two Inferior Spines of the Neck, and four Superior of the Back, and is inserted fleshy into the whole basis of the *Scapula*, which it draws backwards.

The fourth is the *Levator Scapulae*; it arises from the second, fourth, and fifth transverse Processes of the Neck by so many distinct beginnings, which unite, and are inserted into the Superior Angle of the *Scapula*, which it draws upwards: It is also call'd *Musculus Patientiae*, because those who are any-ways grieved use it.

These Muscles may move the Arm, as those of the Arm move it, because of the connexion of the two Bones: They help also in Respiration.

### S E C T. V.

#### *Of the Muscles of Respiration, and of the Benders and Extensors of the Vertebrae.*

THE Cavity of the *Thorax* is dilated and contracted in Respiration by nine and twenty Pair of Muscles; five and twenty Pair pull the Ribs up, three Pair accelerate their motion downwards, and one Pair, viz. the *Diaphragma*, helps both in the one and the other; this last we have described already.

The

The Muscles which dilate the Thorax in Inspiration, are,

The *Intercostales Externi & Interni*; they are in number four and forty, one of each sort between every two Ribs; they arise from the lower edges of each Superior Rib, and are inserted into the upper edges of each Inferior Rib. Their Fibres decussate one another; those of the External run obliquely from the back-part forwards, but those of the Internal from the forepart backwards.

The *Subclavius* arises from the lower side of the half of the *Clavica* that is nearest the *Acromium*, and descends obliquely to be inserted into the upper part of the first Rib, near the *Sternum*.

The *Serratus Anticus Major*; it comes from the whole basis of the *Scapula*, and is inserted into the seven true Ribs, and first of the false Ribs, by so many distinct portions which represent the teeth of a Saw. The *Obliquus Descendens* of the *Abdomen* lie between the spaces of its lower Indentations.

The *Serratus Posticus Superior*; it ariseth by a broad and thin Tendon from the two Inferior Spines of the *Vertebra* of the Neck, and the three Superior of the Back; and growing fleshy, 'tis inserted into the second, third and fourth Ribs by so many distinct Indentations.

When

When all these Muscles act, they draw the Ribs upwards, bringing the Ribs to right Angles with the *Vertebrae*; and consequently the Cavity of the *Thorax* must be wider and shorter: but because at the same time the *Diaphragma* contracts, therefore the Cavity is also longer.

The Muscles which contract the Cavity of the *Thorax*, are,

The *Triangularis*; it arises from the lower part of the inside of the *Sternum*, and is inserted into the *Cartilages* where they join the *Bones* of the fourth, fifth, sixth, and sometimes seventh true Ribs.

The *Serratus Posticus Inferior* rises by a broad and thin Tendon from the three Inferior Spines of the *Vertebrae* of the Back, and from the two Superior of the Loins; its Fibres ascending obliquely, grow fleshy, and are inserted by four Indentations into the four last Ribs.

The *Sacrolumbus*; it arises fleshy from the Superior part of the *Os Sacrum*, Posterior part of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and from all the Spines and transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins: It gives a small Tendon to the Posterior part of each Rib near its Root, where a small bundle of fleshy Fibres arises and unites with each ascending Tendon to the third, fourth, fifth and sixth *Vertebrae* of the Neck. These Muscles

Muscles are of small force, and seem only to accelerate the motion of the Ribs, which fall down by their own gravity, and the elasticity of the Ligaments, by which they are bound to the *Vertebrae*.

The Muscles of the Back and Neck are very numerous, and variously described by Authors. I shall not multiply them, but take all that have the same Direction and Disposition for the same Muscle, though perhaps it may be divided into as many Muscles as there are *Vertebrae*. The first is,

The *Longissimus Dorsi*. This Muscle at its beginning is not to be separated from the *Sacrolumbus*, arising with it from the back part of the Spine of the *Ilium* and upper part of the *Os Sacrum*; and as it ascends it gives Tendons to each transverse Process of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, *Thorax*, and Neck. When these Muscles act, they keep the Body erect. Under this lies

The *Transversalis Dorsi*, of which Authors commonly make three, viz. the *Sacer*, the *Semi-spinatus*, and *Transversalis Colli*. This Muscle arises from the *Os Sacrum*, and from all the Transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, Back, and Neck, except the two first, and is inserted by so many distinct Tendons to all their Superiour

Superior Spines: This Muscle moves the whole Spine obliquely backwards.

The *Inter-Spinalis*, of which the first part is call'd (by *Bidlow*) *Semi-Spinalis*, and the other part (by *Mr. Cooper*, who first observ'd them) *Inter Spinales Colli*: They arise partly fleshy and partly tendinous from the Spines of the Loins and the Inferior of the *Thorax*, and are inserted into the fifth, sixth, and seventh Spines of the *Thorax*. These join the *Longissimus Dorsi*. The other part arises from the Superior parts of each double Spinal Process of the Neck, except that of the Second *Vertebra*, and is inserted into the Inferior parts of all the said Spines. These Muscles draw the Spines of the *Vertebrae* nearer one another.

The *Spinalis Colli*. It arises from the five Superior Transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the *Thorax*, and Inferior of the Neck, and is inserted with its fellow into the Inferior part of the Second *Vertebra* of the Neck. They pull the Neck directly backwards.

The *Quadratus Lumborum*. It ariseth from the posterior part of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and is inserted into the inside of all the transverse Process of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins. This Muscle moves the Body upon the Loins to one side, and both together help the *Rectus Abdominis* in bending our Body forwards.

The

The *Vertebrae* of the Neck are bended by two Pair of Muscles, which have been already described. The *Vertebrae* of the Back have no Benders, and those of the Loins are bended by the Muscles of the Lower Belly, and by one proper Pair which is call'd the *Psoas Parvus*; it arises fleshy from the sides of the upper *Vertebrae* of the Loins, and it has a thin and broad Tendon which embraces the *Psoas* of the Thigh, and which is inserted into the *Os Innominatum*, where the *Os Pubis* and *Ilium* join together.

S E C T. VI.

Of the Muscles of the Humerus, or Arm.

THE Arm moves five different ways, upwards, downwards, forwards, backwards, and round.

The Arm is lifted upwards by the *Deltoides*, *Supra-spinatus*, and *Coraco-brachialis*.

The *Deltoides* is of a triangular figure, it comes from all the *Spina Scapulae*, from the *Acromium*, from the External Half of the *Clavicula*; from all these places its Fibres drawing together, pass above the Articulation of the *Humerus*, and are inserted by a short Tendon, four fingers below the Head of the same Bone, almost on its External side. *Steno* shews that

that this Muscle is composed of twelve simple Muscles: According to the direction of its Fibres, it pulls also the Arm a little forwards and backwards.

The *Supra-spinatus* rises fleshy from all the basis of the *Scapula*, that is above the Spine. It fills all that space between the upper side of the *Scapula* and its Spine, to which two it is also attached: It passes above the *Acromium*, over the Articulation of the *Humerus*, and is inserted into the Neck of the *Humerus*, which it embraces by its Tendon.

The *Coracobrachialis* rises from the *Processus Coracoideus Scapula* by a tendinous beginning; and passing over the Articulation, it is inserted into the middle and Internal part of the *Humerus*.

The *Teres Major* and the *Latissimus Dorsi* pull the Arm downwards.

The *Teres Major* rises from the lower Angle of the *Scapula*, and is inserted with the following a little below the Head of the *Humerus*.

The *Latissimus Dorsi*, or *Aniscaptor*, with its fellow, covers almost all the Back. It hath a thin and large tendinous beginning, which comes from the Posterior part of the Spine of the *Ilium*, from the Superior Spines of the *Os Sacrum*, from all the Spines of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, and from the seven Lower of

of the *Thorax*; it passes by the Inferior Angle of the *Scapula*, from which some of its fleshy Fibres sometimes arise, and is inserted with the *Teres Major* by a strong and broad Tendon.

The *Pectoralis* moves the Arm forwards; it ariseth by a fleshy and Semi-circular beginning from the inner half of the *Clavicula*, from the six Superior Ribs; it covereth a great part of the Breast, and is inserted by a short but strong and broad Tendon into the upper and inner part of the *Humerus*, between the *Biceps* and *Deltoides*. Its Fibres near their Insertion decussate each other. Those which come from the *Clavicle* and first Ribs are on the lower side of the Tendon; and those from the inferior Ribs are on the upper side of the Tendon.

The Arm is drawn backwards by the *Infra-Spinatus*, the *Transversalis*, and the *Sub-Scapularis*.

The *Infra-Spinatus* covers all the space that is between the Spine of the *Scapula* an its inferior side; and passing between the Spine and the *Teres Minor*, 'tis inserted into the Neck of the *Humerus*.

The *Transversalis*, or *Teres Minor*, comes from the inferior edge of the *Scapula*, upon which it runs between the former and the *Teres Major*, and is inserted into the Neck of the *Humerus*.

The *Sub-Scapularis* covers all the Internal side of the *Scapula*; it rises fleshy from its basis, from its upper and lower *Casta*, and is inserted into the Neck of the *Humerus*. It draweth the Arm close to the Ribs.

The Tendons of these three last Muscles surround the Articulation of the *Humerus*. When all these Muscles move successively, they move the Arm circularly.

### S E C T. VII.

#### Of the Muscles of the Cubitus and Radius.

THE *Cubitus* is bended and extended by six Muscles; the *Biceps* and *Brachialis Internus* bend it; the *Longus*, *Brevis*, *Brachialis Externus*, and the *Anconeus*, extend it.

The *Biceps* is so called, because it hath two Heads, of which one rises from the upper edge of the Cavity of the Head of the *Scapula*. This Head is round and tendinous, and is enclosed in the Chanel in the Head of the *Humerus*. The other arises from the *Processus Coracoides*; it is broad and tendinous, and both together unite about the middle and forepart of the Arm, and make one Belly, which is inserted, by a strong and round Tendon, into the Tubercl<sup>e</sup> at the upper end of the

the *Radiis*. Some of the Fibres of this Tendon form a large and thin *Aponeurosis* which covers all the Muscles of the *Radiis* and Fingers externally. Care ought to be taken in Blood-letting, not to cut across, but according to the length of the Fibres of this *Aponeurosis*.

The *Brachius Internus* lies partly under the *Biceps*; it ariseth by a fleshy beginning from the middle and internal part of the *Humerus*, and is inserted into the upper and fore-part of the *Cubitus* by a very short but strong Tendon.

The *Longus* is the first of those which extend the *Cubitus*; it ariseth from the Interior *Costa* of the *Scapula*, nigh its Neck, and passeth betwixt the two round Muscles; it descendeth upon the backside of the *Humerus*, where it joins with the two following.

The *Brevis* arises from the Superior and Posterior part of the *Humerus*.

The *Brachius Externus* arises about the middle and Posterior part of the *Humerus*. These three join their fleshy Fibres together, and being externally tendinous, they cover all the Elbow, and are inserted into the *Olecranon*.

The *Anterior* is a small Muscle which arises from the backpart of the Extremity of the *Humerus*, passes over the Elbow, and is inserted into the Lateral and Internal part of the *Ulna*, about

three or four fingers breadth below the *Olecranonum*.

The *Radius* bath four Muscles, two *Pronatores*, which turn the Palm of the Hand downwards, they are the *Rotundus* and the *Quadratus*; and two *Supinatores*, which turn the Palm upwards, they are called *Longus* and *Brevis*.

The *Rotundus* arises fleshy from the Internal Extuberance of the *Humerus*, and goes obliquely to be inserted into the middle and External Part of the *Radius*.

The *Quadratus* arises by a broad and fleshy beginning from the lower and Internal Part of the *Ulna*; it passes over the Ligament that joins the *Radius* to the *Ulna*, and is inserted as broad as its beginning into the External and lower Part of the *Radius*.

The first of the *Supinatores* is the *Longus*; it ariseth by a fleshy beginning, three or four fingers breadth, above the External Extuberance of the *Humerus*. It lies all along the *Radius*, to whose Interior and External Part it is inserted by a pretty broad Tendon.

The second is the *Brevis*; it cometh from the External and upper Part of the *Ulna*, and passing round the *Radius*, 'tis inserted into its upper and forepart, below the Tendon of the *Biceps*.

S E C T.

## S E C T. VIII.

*Of the Muscles of the Palm of the Hand  
and of the Wrist.*

THE Muscles of the Palm of the Hand are two.

The first is that which is commonly known by the Name of *Palmaris*; it ariseth from the Internal Extuberance of the *Humerus*, and by a long and slender Tendon it passes above the *Ligamentum Annulare* to the Palm of the Hand, where it expands it self into a large *Aponeurosis*, which cleaves close to the Skin above, and to the sides of the Bones of the *Metacarpe* below, and to the first *Phalanx* of the Fingers, by which means it makes four Cases for the Tendons of the Benders of the Fingers to pass through. This Muscle is sometimes wanting, but the *Aponeurosis* is always there.

The second may be called *Palmaris Brevis*; it lies under the *Aponeurosis* of the first; it arises from the Bone of the *Metacarpus* that sustains the Little-Finger, and from that Bone of the *Carpus* that lies above the rest. It goes transversely, and is inserted into the eighth Bone of the *Carpus*. The first assists the Hand to grasp any thing closely,

ly, and the second makes the Palm of the Hand concave.

The Muscles of the Wrist are four, two Internal for bending of it, and two External for extending it.

The first is the *Cubitus Internus*; it arises from the Internal Extuberance of the *Humerus* and upper part of the *Ulna*, upon which it runs all along till it pass under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, and is inserted by a strong and short Tendon into the fourth of the first order of the *Carpus*.

The second is the *Radius Internus*, which comes from the same part with the former, and lying along the *Radius*, it is inserted into the first Bone of the *Metacarpus* that sustains the Fore-finger. These two Muscles bend the Wrist.

The third, which is the first of the Extensors, is the *Cubitus Externus*; it cometh from the External Extuberance of the *Humerus*, and passing its Tendon under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, 'tis inserted into the fourth Bone of the *Metacarpus* that sustains the Little-Finger.

The fourth is the *Radius Externus* or *Bicornis*, which is two distinct Muscles; the first arises from above the External Protuberance of the *Humerus*, and the second from the lowermost part of the External Protuberance. They both lie along the External part of the *Radius*; they

they pass under the annular Ligament, and the one is inserted into the Bone of the *Metacarpus*, that sustains the Fore-finger, the other to that which sustains the Middle-finger; these two extend the Wrist.

## S E C T. IX.

*Of the Muscles of the Fingers.*

**T**HE Fingers are bended and extended, they are drawn to and from the Thumb by several Muscles. The Muscles which bend them are the *Sublimis* and the *Profundus*.

The *Sublimis*, otherwise call'd *Perforatus*, arises from the Internal Protuberance of the *Humerus*, and from the upper and forepart of the *Radius*: It divides into four parts which send four Tendons, which pass under the annular Ligament to be inserted into the upper part of the second *Phalanx* of each of the four Fingers. Each of these Tendons, as they pass the first internode of the Fingers, have a slit in their middle, for the passage of the Tendons of

The *Profundus*, which lies under the *Sublimis*; it ariseth fleshy from the upper part of the *Ulna*, and from the Ligament that joins this Bone to the *Radius*: The lower part of its Body is outwardly

tendinous; it divides into four round Tendons which pass under the annular Ligament, and through the slits of the former Tendons, to be inserted into the third Bone of the Fingers.

These Muscles have this in particular, that the Tendons of the uppermost give passage to the Tendons of the lower: And their Tendons upon the Palm of the Hand are enclosed in Cases from the *Aponeurosis Palmaris*, and upon the Fingers in strong membranous Cases which are fix'd to the sides of each Finger.

The *Extensor Digitorum Communis* arises from the External Protuberance of the *Humerus*, and at the Wrist it divides into three flat Tendons, which pass under the annular Ligament, to be inserted into all the Bones of the Fore, Middle, and Ring-Finger. These Tendons, near the first internodes of the Fingers, give some tendinous Fibres to each other, and some also to the *Interossei*.

The *Lumbricates*, or *Vermicularis*, are small Muscles which rise from the Tendons of the *Profundus*, and are inserted into the first internodes of each Finger. On their Internal sides next the Thumb they assist in bending the first Joint of the Fingers.

The *Interossei*, some reckon six, and others, more justly, eight; they are contained betwixt the spaces of the Bones

Bones of the *Metacarpus*; the one half of them lies betwixt the spaces that these Bones leave towards the Palm of the Hand; they are the Internal *Interossei*; they arise from the upper part of the Bones of the *Metacarpus* next the *Carpus*, and they are inserted on the Internal sides of the first Bones of the Fingers with the *Lumbricales*; they are the *Adductores Digitorum*, for they bring the Fingers to the Thumb. The other half are contained in the spaces that the Bones of the *Metacarpus* leave on the Back of the Hand; they rise from the upper part of the Bones of the *Metacarpus* next the *Carpus*, and they are inserted on the External sides of the first Bones of the Fingers, and these are the *Abductores Digitorum*, for they draw the Fingers from the Thumb.

The Thumb is bended by two Muscles. The first arises from the Internal Extuberance of the *Humerus*, from the middle and inner part of the *Radius*, by two different orders of fleshy Fibres; and passing under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, its Tendon is inserted into the third Bone of the Thumb. The second arises from the Bones of the *Carpus*, from the annular Ligament, and is inserted into the second internode of the Thumb. These two Muscles are call'd *Flexores Pollicis*.

## Of the Muscles of the Fingers.

It is extended by three Muscles, which are,

The *Extensor Primi Interossei Pollicis*. It arises from the upper and External part of the *Ulna*; it passes obliquely over the Tendon of the *Radius Externus*, and is inserted near the second Joint of the Thumb.

The *Extensor Secundi Interossei Pollicis*. It arises from the upper and Internal part of the *Radius*, and is inserted into the upper part of the second Bone of the Thumb.

The *Extensor Tertiis Interossei Pollicis*. It arises from the *Ulna*, a little below the First Extensor, and is inserted into the third Bone of the Thumb.

The *Tenar* draws the Thumb from the Fingers; it makes that Part which is call'd *Mons Luna*; it ariseth from the *Ligamentum Annulare*, and first Bone of the *Carpus*, and is inserted into the External side of the Thumb.

The *Antitenor* draws the Thumb to the Fingers; it riseth from the Bone of the *Metacarpus* that sustains the Fore-finger, and is inserted into the first Bone of the Thumb.

The *Abductor Indicis* arises from the forepart of the first Bone of the Thumb, and is inserted into the Bones of the Fore-finger; it draws this Finger to the Thumb.

The

The Index hath a particular *Extensor*, which comes from the middle and External part of the *Ulna*; it passeth under the annular Ligament, and is inserted into the third Bone of the Fore-finger, where it joins the *Extensor Communis*.

The Little-finger hath two proper Muscles, the one draws it from the other Fingers, the other extends it. The first is call'd *Hypotenar*; it ariseth from the fourth Bone of the second rank of the Bones of the *Carpus*, and from the *Ligamentum Annulare*, and is inserted externally into the first Bone of the Little-finger; this draws it from the other Fingers.

The *Extensor* of the Little-finger arises from the External Protuberance of the *Humerus*, and from the upper part of the *Ulna*; it passeth under the annular Ligament, and is inserted into the third Bone of the Little-finger.

## S E C T. X.

### Of the Muscles of the Thigh.

THE Thigh is bended and extended, moved outwards and inwards, obliquely and circularly, by thirteen Muscles.

It is bended by the *Psoas*, *Iliacus*, and *Pectenius*.

The

The *Psoas* arises from the Internal side of the transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins, within the *Abdomen*; and descending upon part of the Internal side of the *Ilium*, it is inserted into the lower part of the little *Trochanter*.

The *Iliacus* arises from the Internal Cavity of the *Os Ilium*; and descending, it joins with the former, with which it is also inserted.

The *Pectineus* arises from the External part of the *Os Pubis*, and is inserted a little below the lesser *Trochanter*.

The Thigh is extended by the *Glutaeus Major*, *Medius* and *Minor*.

The *Glutaeus Major* arises semicircularly from the *Os Coccygis*, the Spines of the *Sacrum*, from the Spine of the *Ilium*; and from a strong Ligament that runs between the *Sacrum* and Tuberle of the *Ischium*; and descending, 'tis inserted into the *Linea Aspera*, four fingers breadth below the great *Trochanter*.

The *Glutaeus Medius* arises from all the Spine of the *Ilium* under the former, and is inserted into the Superior and External part of the great *Trochanter*.

The *Glutaeus Minor* arises from the lower part of the External side of the *Ilium*, under the former, and is inserted at the Superior part of the great *Trochanter*.

The

The Thigh is moved inwards, or they are both brought together by the *Triceps* which hath three Originations and three Insertions, and may be divided into three Muscles.

The first arises from the *Os Pubis*, and is inserted above the second into the *Linea Aspera* of the Thigh-Bone.

The second arises from the lower part of the *Os Pubis*, and is inserted about the middle of the *Linea Aspera*.

The third arises from the *Os Pubis*, where it joins the *Os Ischium*, and is inserted from a little below the second to the Internal and lower *Apophysis* of the Thigh-Bone: When they act, they pull the Thigh-Bone inwards, and turn it a little outwards.

The Thigh is turned outwards by the *Quadrigemini*.

The first is the *Pyriformis*, or *Iliacus Externus*; it arises round and fleshy from the Inferior and Lateral part of the *Os Sacrum*, and is inserted with

The second and third, call'd *Gemini*, which arise from the Protuberance of the *Ischium*, and are inserted with the first in the dent at the root of the great *Trochanter*.

The fourth is the *Quadratus*; it comes from the Protuberance of the *Ischium*, and is inserted into the outside of the great *Trochanter*.

The

The Thigh is moved circularly and obliquely when these Muscles act successively, but particularly by the two *Obturatories*.

The *Obturator Internus* comes from the Internal Circumference of the Hole that is between the *Ischium* and *Pubis*; and passing through the Sinuosity of the *Ischium*, it is inserted into the dent of the great *Trochanter*. Its Tendon lies between the *Gemini*; it turns the Thigh to the outside.

The *Obturator Externus* comes from the External Circumference of the same Hole as the former: It embraces the Neck of the Thigh-Bone, and passes under the *Quadratus* to the small Cavity of the great *Trochanter*.

### S E C T. XI.

#### Of the Muscles of the Leg.

THE Leg is bended by four Muscles, and extended by four others. The Muscles which bend it, are,

The *Semi-nervosus*, which arises from the Protuberance of the *Ischium*, and is inserted by a round Tendon into the Internal part of the *Epiphysis* of the *Tibia*.

The *Semi-membranosus* arises tendinous from the Protuberance of the *Ischium*, immediately below the former, and

and is inserted by a large Tendon into the upper and back-part of the *Tibia*.

The *Biceps*, so called because it has two Heads, of which one comes from the tuberosity of the *Ischium*, the other from the middle of the *Linea Aspera*, both which join together, and are inserted by one Tendon into the Superior and External part of the *Perone*.

The *Gracilis* arises from the union of the *Os Pubis* and *Ischium*, and descending by the inside of the Thigh, it grows tendinous, and is inserted into the Superior and Internal side of the *Tibia*.

The Leg is extended by four Muscles, which are,

The *Rectus*; it arises from the lower part of the Spine of the *Hium*, and descending between the two following, it's inserted with them.

The *Vastus Externus*, which comes from the root of the great *Trochanter*, and part of the *Linea Aspera*.

The *Vastus Internus*, which arises from the root of the lesser *Trochanter*.

The *Crureus*, which comes from the fore-part of the Thigh-Bone, between the great and lesser *Trochanter*, and lying close upon the Bone, it joins its Tendon with the three former, which all together make one broad Tendon, which passes over the *Patella*, and is inserted

inserted into the little Tuberosity on the upper and forepart of the *Tibia*.

The Leg is moved obliquely by three Muscles.

The *Longus* or *Sartorius*; it arises from the Inferior part of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and running obliquely by the inside of the Thigh, is inserted into the Internal side of the *Tibia*, three or four fingers breadth below its upper Extremity. By this Muscle we throw one Leg and Thigh cross another.

The *Poplitus*; it arises from the External and Inferior Protuberance of the Thigh-Bone, and passing over the Joint obliquely, is inserted into the Superior and Internal part of the *Tibia*. This assists in bending of the Leg, and turns it a little inwards.

The *Membranosus*, or *Fascia Lata*, which arises fleshy from the forepart of the Spine of the *Ilium*, and a little below it becomes membranous or tendinous, and covers almost all the Muscles of the Thigh and Leg down to the Foot. This Muscle helps in extending of the Leg, and turns the Leg a little outwards.

### S E C T. XII.

#### Of the Muscles of the Foot.

THE Foot is bended by the *Tibialis* and *Peronaeus Anticus*.

The

The *Tibialis Anticus* arises flesh from the upper and forepart of the *Tibia*, and adhering to the External side of the *Tibia*, as it descends it passes under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, and is inserted into the *Os Cuneiforme*, which answers to the Great-Toe.

The *Peroneus Anticus* is joined to the *Posticus* at its Origination, which is from the upper and External half of the *Perone*; and running through the Chanel which is in the External Ankle, 'tis inserted into the *Os Metatarsi* that sustains the Great-Toe.

The Foot is extended by four Muscles.

The first and second are the *Gasterocnemius* or *Gemellus*, which, with the *Soleus*, make the Calf of the Leg; the one arises from the back-part of the Internal Protuberance of the Thigh-Bone, the other from the same part of the External Protuberance of the same Bone: They have two large fleshy Bellies, which join and make one Tendon with the following, which is inserted into the *Os Calcis*.

The third is the *Soleus*, which lies under the former; it arises from the upper and back-part of the *Tibia* and *Perone*; and descending, it joins its Tendon with the former. The Tendon of these three Muscles is big and strong, call'd *Tendo Achillis*.

The fourth is the *Plantaris*; it has a fleshy Origination from the back-part of the External Protuberance of the Thigh-Bone; and descending a little way between the *Gemellus* and *Solens*, it becomes a long and slender Tendon, which marches by the inside of the great Tendon, and at the Sole of the Foot it is expanded into a large *Aponeurosis*, which has the same use, situation and connexion as that of the Palm of the Hand.

The Foot is moved side-ways by two Muscles.

The *Tibialis Posticus*, which arises from the Superior and back-part of the *Tibia* and *Fibula*, and Membrane that ties them together, and descending by the hind-part of the *Tibia*, it passes through the Fissure of the inner Ankle, and is inserted into the under side of the *Os Naviculare*; it moveth the Foot inwards.

The *Peronaeus Posticus* arises from the Superior and External part of the *Perone*; and descending, it passes through the Fissure of the external Ankle under the Sole of the Foot, to be inserted into the *Os Metatarsi* that sustains the Little-Toe. When this Muscle acteth, it pulleth the Foot outwards.

## S E C T. XIII.

## Of the Muscles of the Toes.

THE four lesser Toes are bended, and extended, and moved side-ways.

They are bended by the *Perforans* and *Perforatus*.

The *Perforans* arises from the upper and back part of the *Tibia*, and passing under the inner Ankle, and Ligament that ties the *Tibia* and *Os Calcis* together, it divides into four Tendons, which pass through the Holes of the *Perforatus*, are inserted into the third Bones of each lesser Toe. There is a *Massa Carnea* that arises from the *Os Calcis*, and which joins the Tendons of this Muscle where the *Lumbricales* begin.

The *Perforatus*, or *Flexor Brevis*, arises from the inner and lower part of the *Os Calcis*, and is inserted by four Tendons into the second *Phalanx* of each Toe. These Tendons are perforated to give way to the Tendons of the *Perforans*.

The Toes are extended by the *Longus* and *Brevis*.

The *Longus* comes from the Superior and External part of the *Tibia*, and from the upper part of the *Fibula*; and being divided into five Tendons, it passes under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, and is inserted into the third Bones of the lesser Toes,

*Of the Muscles of the Toes.*

Toes, and into the *Os Metatarsi* that sustains the Little-Toe.

The *Brevis* lies under the Tendons of the former, and arises from the External and forepart of the *Os Calcis*, and is inserted by five Tendons into the second *Phalanx* of the Toes : These Tendons cut the Tendons of the former at acute Angles.

The four *Lumbricales* arise from the Tendons of the *Perforans*, and are inserted into the inside of the lesser Toes.

The eight *Interossei*, which lie betwixt the Bones of the *Metatarsus*, have the same situation, use, origination and insertion as those of the Hand.

The *Abductor Minimi Digi* arises from the External part of the *Os Calcis* ; and lying upon the outside of the *Os Metatarsi*, that sustains the Little-Toe, 'tis inserted into the upper part of the first Bone of the same Toe externally.

The Great-Toe is bended, extended, and moved side-ways by several Muscles.

The *Flexor Pollicis Longus* arises from the upper and back-part of the *Fibula*, and passing behind the inner Ankle, 'tis inserted into the last Bone of the Great-Toe.

The *Flexor Pollicis Brevis* ; it ariseth from the *Os Cuneiforme Medium*, and is inserted into the *Offa Sesamoidea* upon the second Joint of the Great-Toe.

The

The *Extensor Pollicis* arises from near the upper half of the *Perone* forwardly; and passing under the *Ligamentum Annulare*, is inserted into the last Bone of the Great-Toe.

The *Tenar*, or *Abducens Pollicis* arises from the *Os Calcis*, and from the *Os Cuneiforme Majus*, and is inserted into the External side of the *Os Sesamoïdes*.

The *Antiténar*, or *Adductor Pollicis*, arises from the Inferior part of the third *Os Cuneiforme*, and passing obliquely, is inserted into the inside of the *Offa Sesamoïdea*.

The *Transversalis* comes from the Bone of the *Metatarsus* that sustains the Toe next the Little-Toe, and passing a cross the other Bones, 'tis inserted into the *Os sesamoïdes* of the Great-Toe: Its Use is to bring all the Toes close to one another.

## A TABLE of the MUSCLES.

*Frontales,*

They pull the Skin *The Muscles of*  
of the Forehead *the Forehead* *are one Pair.*

*Occipitales,*

They pull the Skin *Of the Hind-*  
of the hind-Head *Head one Pair.*  
upwards.

*Attollens*

*Auri-  
cula-  
rum,*

*Of the Ears  
six Pair.*

*Deprimens*

*Internus*

## A Table of the Muscles.

*Internus Malleoli.* It distends the Tym-

*Externus Malleoli.* It relaxes the Tym-

*Obliquus Malleoli.*

*Musculus Stapedis.* It moves the Stirrup.

Of the Eye-brows, one Pair.

Eye-lids, two Pair.

Eyes, six Pair.

Nose, three Pair.

Lips, six Pair, and one single one.

*Corrugator Super-ciliij.*

*Rectus Palpebræ Su-perioris.* It lifts up the upper Eye-lid.

*Orbicularis Palpe-brarum.* It shuts both Eye-lids.

*Attollens.*

*Deprimens* { *Oculo-*

*Abductor* { *rum,*

*Adductor* { *rum,*

*Obliquus Major,* It pulls the Eye for-wards, and obliquely down-wards.

*Obliquus Minor,* It pulls the Eye for-wards, and obliquely upwards.

*Attollens* { *Nares,*

*Dilatans* { *Nares,*

*Deprimens* { *Nares,*

*Incisivus,* It pulls the Upper Lip upwards.

*Triangularis,* It pulleth it down-wards.

*Caninus,* They pull the Lower-Lip upwards.

*Elevator Labij* { *Quadra-*

*Inferioris,*

<i>Quadratus,</i>	It pulleth it downwards.
<i>Zygomaticus,</i>	It draws both Lips obliquely to either side.
<i>Orbicularis,</i>	It draws both Lips together.
<i>Buccinator,</i>	It thrusts the <i>Meat</i> <small>Of the Cheeks one Pair.</small> between our Teeth.
<i>Temporalis,</i>	They pull the <i>Jaw</i> <small>Lower-Jaw, six Pair.</small>
<i>Masseter,</i>	upwards.
<i>Pterigoidans Inter-</i> <i>nus,</i>	It draws the <i>Jaw</i> to either side.
<i>Pterigoidans Exter-</i> <i>nus,</i>	It draws the <i>Jaw</i> forwards.
<i>Quadratus,</i>	It pulleth the <i>Jaw</i> and the <i>Cheeks</i> downwards.
<i>Digastricus,</i>	It pulleth the <i>Jaw</i> downwards.
<i>Peristaphilinus In-</i> <i>ternus,</i>	It pulls the <i>Uvula</i> <small>Uvula, two Pair.</small> forwards.
<i>Peristaphilinus Ex-</i> <i>ternus,</i>	It pulls the <i>Uvula</i> backwards.
<i>Stylagoglossus,</i>	It draws the <i>Tongue</i> <small>Tongue, three Pair.</small> upwards.
<i>Genioglossus,</i>	It pulls it out of the <i>Mouth.</i>
<i>Ceratoglossus,</i>	It pulls it into the <i>Mouth.</i>
<i>Geniabhyoides,</i>	It Pulls <i>Os Hyoides</i> <small>Os Hyoides, five Pair.</small> & <i>Tongue</i> upwards and forwards.
	<i>Sterno-</i>

<i>Sternohyoideus,</i>	It pulleth the <i>Os-Hyoides</i> downwards.
<i>Mylohyoideus,</i>	It pulls it obliquely upwards.
<i>Coracohyoideus,</i>	It pulls it obliquely downwards.
<i>Stylohyoideus,</i>	It pulls it to either side, and somewhat upwards.
<i>Of the Pharynx, two Pair.</i>	<i>Stylo-Pharyngeus,</i> It pulleth up and dilateth the <i>Pharynx.</i>
<i>Larynx, seven Pair.</i>	<i>Oesophagus,</i> It straitens the <i>Pharynx.</i>
	<i>Sternothyroideus,</i> It pulls the <i>Thyroides</i> downwards.
	<i>Hyothyroideus,</i> It pulls the <i>Thyroides</i> upwards.
	<i>Cricothyroideus,</i>
	<i>Cricoarytænoideus</i>
	<i>Posticus,</i>
	<i>Cricoarytænoideus</i>
	<i>Lateralis.</i>
	<i>Thyroarytænoideus,</i> It dilates the <i>Glot-tis.</i>
	<i>Arytænoideus,</i> It contracts the <i>Glot-tis.</i>
<i>Head, ten Pair.</i>	<i>Splenius,</i> They move the Head backwards.
	<i>Complexus,</i> They nod the Head backwards.
	<i>Rectus Major</i>
	<i>Rectus Minor</i>

Obli-

<i>Obliquus Inferior,</i>	They perform the Semicircular Motion of the Head.
<i>Obliquus Superior,</i>	
<i>Mastoidens,</i>	They nod the Head forwards.
<i>Rectus Internus Major,</i>	
<i>Rectus Internus Minor,</i>	It nods the Head to one side.
<i>Rectus Lateralis,</i>	
<i>Intercostales Interni &amp; Externi,</i>	They pull the Ribs of the Thorax, twenty-nine Pair, upwards in Inspiration.
<i>Subclavius,</i>	
<i>Serratus Anticus Major,</i>	They make the Motion of the Ribs downwards, in Expiration, the swifter.
<i>Serratus Posticus Superior,</i>	
<i>Triangularis,</i>	Its Use is both in Inspiration and Expiration.
<i>Serratus Posticus Inferior,</i>	
<i>Sacrolumbaris,</i>	They compress all the Parts contained in the Lower-Belly; assist the Motion of the Ribs downwards in Expiration, and help to bend the Vertebrae of the Loins forwards.
<i>Diaphragma,</i>	
<i>Obliquus Externus,</i>	O <i>Longiss.</i>
<i>Obliquus Internus,</i>	
<i>Transversalis,</i>	
<i>Rectus,</i>	
<i>Pyramidalis,</i>	

Of the Verte- brae, seven pair.	<i>Longissimus Dorsi</i> , It keeps the Body erect.
	<i>Transversalis Dorsi</i> , It moves the Body obliquely back- wards.
	<i>Inter-spinalis</i> , It draws the acute Processes nearer one another.
	<i>Quadratus Lumbo- rum</i> , It draws the <i>Ver- tebrae</i> of the Loins to one side.
	<i>Longus</i> , They bend the <i>Ver- tebrae</i> of the Neck.
	<i>Scalenus</i> , They bend the <i>Ver- tebrae</i> of the Neck.
	<i>Psoas Parvus</i> , It helps to bend the <i>Vertebrae</i> of the Loins.
The Muscles of the Privi- ties in Men are four pair.	<i>Cremaster</i> , It draws up the Te- sticles in the act of Generation.
	<i>Erectores Penis</i> , <i>Transversalis Penis</i> , <i>Acceleratores Uri- nae</i> ,
Clitoris, one pair.	<i>Erectores Clitoridis</i> ,
One single Muscle of the Bladder.	<i>Sphincter Vesicæ</i> , It contracts the Neck of the Bladder, that the Urine may not run continually.
of the Anus, three single Muscles.	<i>Levatores Ani</i> , They draw up the Anus.
	<i>Sphincter Ani</i> , It shuts the Anus.
	<i>Serratus</i>

<i>Serratus Anticus</i>	It draws the Shoulder-blade forwards.	Of the Shoulder-Blades, four pair.
<i>Minor,</i>		
<i>Trapezius,</i>	It moves it upwards, backwards, and downwards.	
<i>Romboides,</i>	It pulls it backwards.	
<i>Levator Scapulae,</i>	It pulls the Shoulder-blade upwards.	
<i>Deltoides,</i>		
<i>Supra Spinatus,</i>	They lift the Arm upwards.	Shoulder-Bones, nine pair.
<i>Coracobrachialis,</i>		
<i>Teres Major,</i>	They pull the Arm downwards.	
<i>Latissimus Dorsi,</i>		
<i>Pectoralis,</i>	It moves the Arm forwards.	
<i>Infra Spinatus,</i>		
<i>Transversalis,</i>	They draw the Arm backwards.	
<i>Subscapularis,</i>		
<i>Biceps</i>	They bend the fore-Arm.	Cubiti, six pair.
<i>Brachialis Internus,</i>		
<i>Longus,</i>		
<i>Brevis,</i>	They extend the fore-Arm.	
<i>Brachialis Externus,</i>		
<i>Anconeus,</i>		
<i>Rotundus,</i>	They perform the Motion of Pro-nation, or they	Radij, four pair.
<i>Quadratus,</i>	turn the Palm of the Hand downwards.	

<i>Longus,</i>	They perform the Motion of <i>Supination</i> , or they turn the Palm of the Hand upwards.
<i>Brevis,</i>	
<i>Of the Wrists, Cubitus Internus, Radians Internus,</i>	They bend the Wrist.
<i>Cubitus Externus, Radians Externus,</i>	
<i>Of the Palms Palmaris, of the Hands, two pair.</i>	They extend the Wrist.
<i>Palmaris Brevis,</i>	
<i>Of the Fingers, Sublimis, Profundus, Extensor Digitorum Communis,</i>	It helps the Hand to grasp any thing closely.
<i>Lumbricales,</i>	
<i>Interossei Interni, Interossei Externi,</i>	
	It makes the Palm of the Hand concave.
	They bend the Fingers.
	They draw the Fingers to the Thumb.
	They draw the Fingers from the Thumb.
	<i>Flexor</i>

*Flexor Pollicis Longus,*

*Flexor Pollicis Brevis,*

*Extensor Primi,*

— *Secundi,*

— *Tertiij Inter-*  
*nodii Pollicis,*

*Tenar,*

*Antitenar,*

*Abductor Indicis,*

*Extensor Indicis,*

*Hypotenar,*

*Extensor Auricula-*

*ris,*

*Psoas,*

*Iliacus,*

*Pectenans,*

*Glutens Major,*

*Glutens Medius,*

*Glutens Minor,*

*Triceps,*

*Pyriformis,*

*Gemini,*

*Quadratus,*

The particular  
Muscles of the  
Thumbs are  
seven pair.

It draws the Thumb  
from the Fingers.

It draws the Thumb  
to the Fingers.

Of the Fore-  
fingers, two  
pair.

It draws the Little- of the Little-  
Finger from the fingers, two  
rest. pair.

They bend the Thigh.

The Muscles  
of the Thighs  
are thirteen  
pair.

They extend the Thigh.

It pulls the Thigh  
inwards.

They move the Thigh outwards.

<i>Obturator Internus,</i>	They help to move the Thigh obliquely, and circularly.
<i>Obturator Externus,</i>	
<i>Of the Legs, Semi-nervosus,</i>	They bend the Leg.
<i>eleven pair. Semi-membranosus,</i>	
<i>Biceps,</i>	They extend the Leg.
<i>Gracilis,</i>	
<i>Rectus,</i>	It makes the Legs cross one another.
<i>Vastus Externus,</i>	
<i>Vastus Internus,</i>	It turns the Leg somewhat inwards.
<i>Crureus,</i>	
<i>Sartorius,</i>	It turns it a little outwards.
<i>Poplitus,</i>	
<i>Membranosus,</i>	
<i>Of the Feet, Tibialis Anticus,</i>	They bend the Foot.
<i>eight pair. Peronaeus Anticus,</i>	
<i>Gastrocnemis,</i>	They extend the Foot.
<i>Soleus,</i>	
<i>Plantaris,</i>	It moveth the Foot inwards.
<i>Tibialis Posticus,</i>	
<i>Peronaeus Posticus,</i>	It moveth the Foot outwards.
<i>Of the Toes, Profundus,</i>	They bend the four lesser Toes.
<i>twenty four Sublimis,</i>	
<i>pair. Lumbricales,</i>	<i>Longus,</i>

<i>Longus,</i>	They extend the four lesser Toes.
<i>Brevis,</i>	
<i>Flexor Pollicis,</i>	
<i>Extensor Pollicis,</i>	
<i>Tenar,</i>	It draws the Great- Toe from the rest.
<i>Antitenar,</i>	It draws it to the rest.
<i>Flexor Pollicis Lon- gus,</i>	
<i>Brevis,</i>	
<i>Abductor Minimi Digi-</i>	
<i>Interossei Interni,</i>	They draw the Toes to the Great-Toe.
<i>Interossei Externi;</i>	They draw them from the Great- Toe.
<i>Transversalis,</i>	It brings all the Toes close to one another.

In all 446 single Muscles in the Body.

## C H A P. VII.

*Of the Nerves, Veins, and Arteries.*

## S E C T. I.

*Of the Nerves in General.*

**A** NERVE is a long and small bundle of very fine Pipes, or hollow Fibres, wrapt up in the *Dura* and *Pia Mater*; which last not only covers them all in common, but it also encloses every Fibre in particular.

The Medullary Substance of the Brain is the beginning of all the Nerves; and 'tis probable that each Fibre of the Nerves answers to a particular part of the Brain at one end, and to a particular part of the Body at its other end, that whenever an impression is made upon such a part of the Brain, the Soul may know that such a Part of the Body is affected.

The Nerves do ordinarily accompany the Arteries through all the Body, that the Animal Spirits may be kept warm, and moving, by the continual heat and pulse of the Arteries. They have also Blood-

Blood-Vessels as the other Parts of the Body: These Vessels are not only spread upon their Coats, but they run also amongst their Medullary Fibres, as may be seen amongst the Fibres of the *Retina*. Where-ever any Nerve sends out a branch, or receives one from another, or where two Nerves join together, there is generally a *Ganglio* or *Plexus* either less or more, as may be seen at the beginning of all the Nerves of the *Medulla Spinalis*, and in many other places of the Body.

SECT. II.

Of the Nerves which come immediately out of the Skull.

THE Nerves are divided into those which come immediately out of the Skull, and those which come out between the Vertebrae. The first sort come from the *Medulla Oblongata*, which has been already described, and they are ten Pair.

The first Pair are called *Nervi Olfactorii*; they arise from the basis of the *Corpora Striata*, and passing through the little holes of the *Os Cribiforme*, they are spread upon the Membrane which covers the *Os Spongiosum*.

The second are call'd *Optici*; they rise partly from the Extremities of the *Cor-*

poria Striata, and partly from the Thalamis Nervorum Opticarum, which last they almost embrace; from thence approaching one another, they unite above the Cella Turcica, and immediately dividing again, they pass through the foramina of the Os Sphenoides into the Orbit, where piercing the Globe of the Eye, their Medullary Fibres are spread upon the glassy Humour.

Oculorum  
Motores.

The third are called *Oculorum Motores*; they arise from the *Medulla Oblongata* on each side of the *Infundibulum*, and the *Carotid Arteries* lie between them; from thence passing through the *Foramina Lacera* of the *Os Sphenoides*, they give a branch, which, with a branch of the fifth Pair, forms a considerable *Plexus*, which sends out several twigs which embrace the *Optick Nerve*, and are spent on the *Tunics of the Eye*: They give a branch to the *Muscles call'd Accollens, Deprimens, and Obliquus Minor of the Globe.*

The fourth Pair are call'd *Patherici*, that rise from a small *Medullary Cord* that is behind the *Testes*; they go down upon the sides of the *Medulla Oblongata*, and passing under the *Dura Mater* by the sides of the *Cella Turcica*, they go through the *Foramina Lacera*, and are wholly spent on the *Obliquus Major*. They have

The

The fifth Pair rise from the forepart of the fifth Pair. of the *Processus Annularis*; they are the biggest Pair of the Brain; they give Nerves to the *Dura Mater*; each of them divides into three branches, of which the foremost is called *Ramus Ophthalmicus*, because it passes through the *Foramen Lacerum* into the Orbit, where it divides into two branches. The first sends out a branch which joins a branch of the *Motores*, and forms the *Plexus Ophthalmicus*. The rest of this first branch passes over the Globe of the Eye, gives some twigs to the *Glandula Lacrymalis*, and goes out at the hole of the *Os Frontis* above the circumference of the Orbit, where it is distributed in the Skin and Frontal Muscles. The second branch of the *Ramus Ophthalmicus* goes under the Muscle *Superbus*, and passes out at the hole call'd *Orbiter Internus*, and is distributed in the Internal Nose.

The second branch of the fifth Pair, which passes out at the third hole of the *Os Sphenoideum*, divides into three branches, of which one pierces the hind-side of the *Os Maxillare*, and gives twigs to the Teeth of the Upper Jaw; all the rest of it comes out at the hole in the fore-side of the same Bone, under the Orbit, and is distributed in the Cheeks and Nose. Another passes under the *Processus Zygomaticus*.

*gomaticus*, and is distributed in the Temporal Muscle ; and the third is distributed in the Palate and Muscles of the *Pharynx*.

The third branch of the fifth Pair passes through another hole of the *Os Sphænoides*, and then it divides into two branches, the first of which is again divided into four branches, of which the first passes between the Condile and the *Corone* of the Lower-Jaw to the *Massater*. The second is distributed in the *Crotaphites*. The third passes under the *Processus Zygomaticus* to the *Buccinator*, Glands of the Cheeks, and Upper-Lip. And the fourth passes from behind the Condile of the Lower-Jaw, where it joins the *Portio Dura* over the Jaw, and is distributed in the Face. The second branch is divided into three others. The first passes between the *Pterigoidæns Externus* and the *Internus* ; and towards the Angle of the Lower-Jaw it sends out a branch which makes the *Chorda Tympani*, which goes also to the Muscles of the *Malleolus*, and then it joins the *Portio Dura* before it comes out of the Cranium ; the rest is spread on the Chin. The second goes along the sides of the Tongue, and sends out several branches which join the ninth Pair. It gives also some twigs to the *Glandula Sublingualis*, to the Muscles of the Tongue and *Os Hyoides*.

*Hoides.* The third goes to the Teeth of the Lower-Jaw by the Holes in its inside.

The sixth Pair of Nerves rise from the sides of the *Processus Annularis*. This is a small Nerve which passes straight through the *Foramen Lacerum*, and is wholly spent on the *Musculus Abducens*. But a little before it enters the Orbit it casts back a branch which alone makes the Root of the Intercostal Nerve. It passes out of the Skull by the same passage the *Carotidale Artery* enters. As soon as it is come out of the Skull, it, with a branch of the tenth Pair, and of the first and second of the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, forms a large *Plexus* call'd *Cervicalis*. Below this, it receives a branch made of a twig of the tenth Pair, and of the first of the Neck. As it descends, above the *Musculus Scalenus*, and below the eighth Pair, it receives a branch from each of the *Vertebral Nerves*. When it comes to the *Clavicula*, it divides into two branches, of which one passes above the *Axillary Artery*, and the other under it, and then they immediately join again; they, with a branch of the first Pair of the Back, form a pretty large *Plexus* at this place; and sometimes before (for it observes no regularity) it casts out a branch, which, with a branch of the eighth Pair, forms the

the *Plexus Cardiacus*; then it goes down the Cavity of the Thorax, under the *Pleura*, near the *Vertebra*, and as it passes by, it receives a branch from every Pair of the Back, by which it grows bigger and bigger. As it goes out of the Thorax it divides into several branches, of which the three Superior in the right side form the *Plexus Hepaticus*, and in the left the *Plexus Splenicus*. These *Plexus's* furnish Nerves to the Kidneys, to the *Pancreas*, to the Cawl, to the lower part of the Stomach, to the Spleen, to the Liver, to the Mesentery, to the Intestines; and their branches form a large Net upon the Mesenterick Arteries, call'd *Plexus Mesentericus*. The inferiour branches, as they go down upon the *Vertebra* of the Loins, receive a branch from the first of the Loins, and they send out branches which join those of the Superior branches which go to the Guts, and which form the Net upon the Mesenterick Arteries. Then they go down into the Basin, and form a large *Plexus* above the streight Gut, to which it gives Nerves, as also to the Bladder, *Vesicula Seminales Prostata* in Men, and to the Womb and *Vagina* in Women.

*Nervus Auditorius.* The seventh Pair is the *Nervus Auditorius*; it arises from the hind-part of the *Processus Annularis*; it enters the hole in the inner Process of the *Ostium Parotum*;

*trifurcans* : It divides into two branches ; that which is soft is call'd *Portio Mollis*, and it is distributed into the Labyrinth *Cochlea*, and Membranes which cover the Cavities of the Ear. That which is hard, is call'd *Portio Dura* ; it goes out of the Ear by that hole which is between the *Processus Mastoides* and *Styloides* ; it divides into two branches, of which one goes to the Muscles of the Tongue, or *Os Hyoides*, and it gives a small branch to the eighth Pair. The other is distributed in the External Ear, Nose, Lips, and Cheeks.

The eighth Pair is the *Par Vagum* ; it *Par Vagum.* rises from the sides of the *Medulla Oblongata*, behind the *Processus Annularis*, by several threads which join together, and go out by the same hole that the *Sinus Laterales* discharge themselves into the *Jugulares*. It is joined by a branch of the *Nervus Spinalis*, or *Accessorius Willisi*, and by a small branch of the *Portio Dura* : Immediately after it comes out of the Skull, it gives a small branch to the *Larynx*, as it goes down the Neck, above the *Intercostal Nerve*, by the side of the *Internal Carotide*. At the *Axillary Artery* it casts back the recurrent Nerves, of which the right embraces the *Axillary Artery*, and the left the *aorta*. These two branches ascend on each side of the *Trachea Arteria* to the

the *Larynx*, where they are spent on the Muscles of the *Larynx* and Membranes of the *Trachea*.

Then the eighth Pair, after it has entered the Cavity of the *Thorax*, sends out two branches, which, with the branches of the two Intercostals, form, a little above the Heart, between the *Aorta* and the *Trachea*, the *Plexus Cardiacus*, which gives a great number of small branches to the *Pericardium* and Heart, particularly very many creep along the *Aorta* to the left Ventricle. The eighth Pair gives also several branches to the Lungs, which accompanying the *Bronchi*, then it descends upon the *Oesophagus*, and is spread upon the *Stomach*, and some twigs go to the Concave side of the *Liver*, as has been said already.

With this Nerve it is usual to describe another which passes out of the Skull at the same hole with it. It is called *Nervus Accessorius Willisi*; it arises from the *Medulla Spinalis*, about the beginning of the sixth Pair of the Neck; as it ascends to the Head, it receives on each side a twig from the first five Pair of Nerves of the Neck, as they rise from the *Medulla Spinalis*; then it enters the Skull, and passes out of it again with the eighth Pair, and is wholly spent upon the *Musculus Trapezius*.

The

The ninth Pair rises from the *Processus Olivares* of the *Medulla Oblongata*; it passes out of the Skull by its own proper hole in the *Os Occipitis*: As it passes to the Tongue, it gives some branches to the Muscles of the *Os Hyoides*, but its Trunk is distributed in the body of the Tongue, and its Extremities from the *Papilla Rotunda* of the Tongue.

The tenth Pair <sup>The tenth Pair</sup> rises by several small threads from the beginning of the *Medulla Spinalis*; then ascending a little, it goes out at the same hole of the *Dura Mater* at which the Vertebral Artery enters, passing between the Protuberance of the *Occiput* and the first *Vertebra*, in the *Sinus*, which we have observed in this *Vertebra*: Then it gives a branch to the first Pair of the Neck which goes to the *Plexus Cervicalis*; it gives another to the second Pair, and a third to the Intercostal Nerve, and then it is all spent on the oblique Muscles of the Head.

### S E C T. III.

Of the Nerves which come out between the Vertebræ.

THE Nerves which come out between the Vertebræ are thirty Pair; they arise from the *Spinalis Medulla*, which (as we have said before) is a continuation

## Of the Nerves which come

tinuation of the *Substantia Medullaris* or *Medulla Oblongata* of the Brain, contained in the great holes of the *Vertebra*. Its Internal Substance is mixed in several places with a Substance like the *Cortical Substance* of the Brain, (as *Malpighius* has observed.) From the first *Vertebra* of the Neck to the first of the Loins, it is divided by the *Pia Mater* into the right and left side, not quite through its middle, but the depth of a Line or two in its fore and hind part. From the first of the Loins to its Extremity, it is divided into a great number of Fibres, which separate from one another, if they be shaken in warm Water. This Part, because of its resemblance, is call'd *Cauda Equina*; 'tis cover'd by four Membranes, of which the first is that which lines the great holes of the *Vertebra*. The second is the *Dura Mater*, which has two *Sinus's*, one on each side of the *Medulla*; they reach from the *Occiput* to the last of the *Os Sacrum*. The third is the *Pia Mater*: And the fourth, call'd *Arachnoïdes*, is a very fine Membrane, which contains only the bundles of Fibres which make the *Vertebral Nerves*.

All the Nerves, as they rise out of the *Medulla Spinalis*, are, by the *Pia Mater*, divided into two Plans, which lie one above the other. And as soon as the Nerves

Nerves are come out of the *Vertebra*, they send a branch to one another, where they make a little *Ganglio*.

The Nerves of the *Vertebra* are thirty Pair, seven of the Neck, twelve of the Back, five of the Loins, and six of the *Os Sacrum*; they come out at the holes in the sides of the bodies of the *Vertebra*, which have been taken notice of in the *Osteology*.

The first Pair of the Neck is spread <sup>of the Nerves</sup> in the Muscles of the Head and Neck; it joins a branch of the tenth Pair, which goes to the *Plexus Cervicalis*, and it gives another branch to the Intercostal Pair below the *Plexus*.

The second Pair of the Neck gives also Nerves to the Muscles of the Head and Neck, to the External Ear and Skin of the Face.

The third gives some branches to the Neck and Head; it sends out the *Nervus Diaphragmaticus*, being joined by a branch from the fourth Pair. This Nerve goes straight down the Cavity of the *Thorax*, and is spread on the Midriff.

The fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh give some branches to the Muscles of the Neck and Head; but their greatest branches, together with a branch of the first of the Back, enter the Arms. As soon as they enter, they join all together, and then they immediately divide into

*Of the Nerves which come*

into five branches. The first and innermost goes all to the Skin which covers the inner and fore part of the Arm. The second goes down by the inner Pro-tuberance of the *Humerus*, by the Ben-ders of the Fingers; and in the Palm of the Hand it divides into five branches, of which one goes to each side of the Little and Ring Finger, and the fifth to the External side of the Middle-Finger. The third accompanies the Artery be-tween the *Sublimis* and the *Profundus*, and divides also into five branches, of which one goes to each side of the Thumb and Fore-Finger, and the fifth to the Internal side of the Middle-Finger. The fourth passes under the *Biceps* to the outer side of the Arm, and Back of the Hand, to be distributed into the Fingers, as the foregoing. The fifth is spent on the Muscles on the inside of the Arm. All these Nerves, except the first, give branches to the Muscles as they pass by.

*Of the Nerves of the Back.*

The first Pair of the twelve Pair of the Back gives a branch (as is said) to the Arms. The twelfth Pair is dispersed in the Mus-cles of the Lower-Belly, and all the rest run along the *Sinus* in the under side of each Rib, giving Nerves to all the Mus-cles that lie upon the Ribs and *Vertebrae*.

*Of the Nerves of the Loins.*

The first and second Pair of the Loins give Nerves to the Muscles of the Lower-Belly,

Belly, to the *Inguen*, to the Yard, and to the Parts contained in the Bason. The third and fourth give some branches to these same Parts, but their trunks join and make the *Nervus Anterior Femoris*, which is dispersed in the fore part of the Thigh. This Nerve sends a branch through the hole in the *Ischium*, which is spent in the *Triceps*. The last of the Loins, with a branch of the fourth, enter the Thigh.

The Nerves of the *Os Sacrum* come of the Nerves not out at the holes on its backside, but of the *Os Sacrum*. at those in its foreside; and the last comes out between the Extremity of the *Sacrum* and the *Os Coccygis*.

The first four Pair of the *Os Sacrum* give some twigs to the Parts in the Bason; but their great branches, with the last, and a branch of the fourth of the Loins, make the *Nervus Sciaticus*, which is the greatest Nerve in the whole Body. As this Nerve passes between the *Gracilis Posterior* and the *Semi-membranosus*, it gives a branch to the Skin. When it comes to the Ham, it divides in two, of which one goes along the *Perone* to the upper part of the Foot, and gives a branch to both sides of each Toe. The other passes under the *Gemelli* by the inner Ankle, and is distributed in like manner to the Toes in their under sides.

The

*Of the Arteries in general.*

The fifth and sixth of the *Os Sacrum* are very small, they are dispersed in the Sphincter, and Bladder, and Natural Parts.

**S E C T. IV.***Of the Arteries in General.*

**T H E** Arteries are Conical Channels which convey the Blood from the Heart to all the Parts of the Body.

Each Artery is composed of three Coats, of which the first seems to be a Web of fine Blood-Vessels and Nerves, for the nourishing of the Coats of the Artery. The second is made up of Circular, or rather spiral Fibres, of which there are more or fewer *Strata*, according to the bigness of the Artery. These Fibres have a strong Elasticity, by which they contract themselves with some force, when the power by which they have been stretched out ceases. The third and inmost Coat is a fine, dense, transparent Membrane, which keeps the Blood within its Channels, which otherwise, upon the dilatation of the Artery, would easily separate the Spiral Fibres from one another. As the Arteries grow smaller and smaller, so these Coats grow thinner, and the Coats of the Veins seem to be only a continuation of the Coats of the Capillary Arteries.

The

The Structure of the Arteries being thus premised, it will be easie to account for their Pulse. When the Left Ventricle of the Heart contracts and throws its Blood into the Great Artery, the Blood in the Artery is not only thrust forwards towards the Extremities, but the Chanel of the Artery is likewise dilated ; because Fluids, when they are pressed, press again to all hands, and their pressure is always perpendicular to the sides of the Containing Vessels ; but the Coats of the Artery, by any small *impetus*, may be distended : Therefore, upon the contraction of the Heart, the Blood from the Left Ventricle will not only press the Blood in the Artery forwards, but both together will distend the sides of the Artery. When the *impetus* of the Blood against the sides of the Artery ceases, that is, when the Left Ventricle ceases to contract, then the Spiral Fibres of the Artery, by their natural Elasticity, return again to their former state, and contract the Chanel of the Artery, till it is again dilated by the Systole of the Heart. This Diastole of the Artery is called its Pulse, and the time the Spiral Fibres are returning to their natural state, is the distance between two Pulses. This Pulse is in all the Arteries of the Body at the same time time ; for whilst the Blood is thrust

thrust out of the Heart into the Artery, the Artery being full, the Blood must move in all the Arteries at the same time; and because the Arteries are Conical, and the Blood moves from the *Basis* of the Cone to the *Apex*, therefore the Blood must strike against the sides of the Vessels, and consequently every point of the Artery must be dilated at the same time that the Blood is thrown out of the Left Ventricle of the Heart; and as soon as the Elasticity of the Spiral Fibres can overcome the *impetus* of the Blood, the Arteries are again contracted. Thus there are two Causes, which operating alternately, keep the Blood in a continual motion, *viz.* the Heart, and Fibres of the Arteries: but because the one is stronger than the other, therefore, though the Blood runs continually, yet when an Artery is open'd, it is seen to move *per Saltum*.

## S E C T. V.

## Of the Trunk of the Aorta Ascendens.

AS all the Blood of the Body passes through the Heart, so all is conveyed by the Branches of the *Aorta*, or Great Artery, to the several Parts of the Body, in the Order we are now to describe.

The

The *Aorta* coming from the left Ventricle of the Heart, sends out two Branches call'd *Coronaria* to the Heart, before it pierces the *Pericardium*; but after it hath pierced it, it ascends a little, and then it crooks downwards and forms the *Aorta Descendens*. From the upper side of this Crook it sends out three Branches, two on the left side which are one *Subclavian* and one *Carotide*, one on the right side which is the right *Subclavian*, from which immediately rises the right *Carotide*.

The *Arteria Subclavia* on each side send out the *Mediastina*; the *Mammaria*, the *Cervicalis* or *Vertebralis*, and a Branch which goes to the Muscles of the Neck, of the Breast, and to the *Glandula Thyroides*. After the *Subclavia* hath passed through the *Musculus Scalenus*, it is called *Axillaris*.

The *Arteria Carotides*, as they ascend on each side of the *Trachea Arteria*, give some small Branches to the *Trachea Arteria*, to the *Larynx*, to the *Glandula Thyroides*, and then they send out each four considerable Branches.

The first goes to the Tongue, to the Muscles of the *Os Hyoides*, and to the *Pharynx*.

The second divides into two Branches, of which the first loses itself in the Muscles *Mitohyoides* and *Digastric*, and

the second goes along the basis of the Lower-Jaw, and is lost in the Muscles of the Lips.

The third Branch divides at the Angle of the Lower-Jaw into two Branches; one enters into the Lower-Jaw, and the other makes the *Arteria Temporalis*.

The fourth Branch goes to the Muscles on the hind-part of the Neck, and to the Skin of the hind-Head.

The Carotide then passes through the Canal in the *Os Petrosum*, gives some Branches to the *Dura Mater*, joins with the *Cervicalis*, sends out Branches to the *Glandula Pituitaria*, *Rete Mirabile*, *Plexus Choroides*, then it runs through all the Circumvolutions of the *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum*, and loses its Capillary Branches in their Cortical Substance.

The *Axillaris*, having pierced the *Scalenum*, gives some little Branches to the nearest Muscles; it sends out the *Thoracica Superior* and *Inferior*, the *Scapularis*, and then it gives a Branch which passes under the Head of the *Humerus* into the *Musculus Longus* and *Brevis* of the Arm.

The Trunk of the *Axillaris* goes down the inside of the Arm, giving Branches by the way to the Muscles that lie upon the *Humerus*. Above the Elbow it sends out a Branch which is spread upon the *Internal Condyle of the Humerus*.

At

At the bending of the Elbow this same Trunk divides into two Branches, the one External, and the other Internal.

The External runs along the *Radius*, it casts out a Branch which goes to the *Supinator*, and ascends to the *Brachialis Internas*, in the rest of its course down to the Wrist, it gives Branches to the *Longus Rotundus*, and Benders of the Fingers, Wrist, and Thumb. Being come to the Wrist, it sends out a Branch which goes to the beginning of the *Tenar*, then it passes under the Tendon of the *Flexor Pollicis*; it gives Branches to the External part of the Hand, and passing under the Tendons of the Muscles, its Branches run along each side of the Thumb and Fore-finger.

The Internal Branch goes down along the *Cubitus* to the Wrist, and is distributed in like manner to each side of the Middle-finger, Ring-finger, and Little-Finger.

S E C T. VI.

Of the Aorta Descendens.

THE *Aorta Descendens* sends out first the *Bronchialis* of *M. Ruysch*, which accompanies all the Branches of the *Bronchi*. As it descends along the *Vertebrae* of the *Thorax*, it sends out on

## Of the Aorta Descendens.

each side the Intercostal Arteries. To the *Diaphragma* it gives the *Phrenica*; and the *Celiaca* is the first it sends out when it enters the *Abdomen*. The *Celiaca* divides into two Branches, the one on the right, the other on the left, of which the first gives the *Gastrica Dextra* which goes to the Stomach, the *Cistica* to the Gall-Bladder, the *Epiplois Dextra* to the *Omentum*, the *Intestinalis* to the Intestine *Duodenum*, and to a part of the *Jejunum*, the *Gastro Epiplois* to the Stomach, to the *Omentum*, and some branches to the Liver, which enter the *Capsula Communis*, to accompany the branches of the *Vena Porta*.

The left Branch of the *Celiaca* gives the *Gastrica Dextra*, which is also spread on the Stomach, the *Epiplois Sinistra* to the *Omentum*, and the *Splenica* to the Substance of the Spleen.

Then the *Aorta Descendens* sends out the *Mesenterica Superior*, the *Renales* or *Adiposae*, which go to the *Glandulae Renales*, and Fat about the Reins, the *Emulgents* to the Reins; the *Spermaticae* to the Testicles, the *Lumbares Inferiores* to the Muscles of the Loins, the *Mesenterica Inferior*, which, with the *Superior*, is distributed through all the *Mesenterium*, and which accompanies all the branches of the *Vene Mesentericae*. When the *Aorta* is come to the *Os Sacrum*, it divides

divides into two great Branches; and from the Angle they make, springs out a small Artery call'd the *Sacra*, because it is spread upon the *Os Sacrum*. The Iliack Arteries divide again into the External and Internal Iliacks.

From the Internal Iliack arises the *Hypogastrica*; 'tis distributed to the Bladder, to the *Rectum*, to the outer and inner side of the *Matrix*, *Vagina*, *Vesiculae Seminales*, *Prostate*, and *Penis*, to the *Os Sacrum*, and to all the Parts contained in the *Pelvis* or *Bason*; then it gives two considerable Branches which go out of the Lower-Belly. The first passes under the *Pyriformis*, and is distributed to the Muscles call'd *Glutæi*. The second, which is lower than the first, gives also two Branches pretty big, of which the first goes to the *Obturatoræ*, the second pierces the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, under the *Pyriformis*, and loses it self by several Branches in the *Glutæus Major*.

As soon as the External Iliack leaves the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, it sends out the *Epigastrica*, which runs up the inside of the *Musculus Rectus*; and a little below that, the *Pudenda*, which goes to the *Privities*. Then it is called *Cruralis*, which sends out three considerable Branches.

The first is called *Muscula*, which gives several Branches. The first passes

between the Muscles call'd *Iliacus* and *Pectineus*, and loses it self in the third Head of the *Triceps* in the *Semi-membranosus* or *Semi-nervosus*, in the beginning of the *Biceps*, in the *Quadrigemini*, and in the Cavity of the great *Trochanter*.

The second, third and fourth go to several parts of the *Triceps* and *Gracilis Posterior*.

Then the Trunk of the *Muscula* goes under the first of the *Triceps*, and divides into three Branches more.

The first having pass'd the third of the *Triceps*, is lost in the *Semi-membranosus*. The second passes under the *Femur* to the *Vastus Externus*. The third goes a little lower, casts Branches to the Tendon of the third of the *Triceps*: it loses it self at the end of the *Semi-nervosus*, and at the end of the great Head of the *Biceps*.

The second considerable Branch of the Trunk of the *Crural* goes to the External part of the Thigh, passes under the *Sartorius*, under the *Gracilis Rectus*; it casts some Branches to the end of the *Iliacus*, to the beginning of the *Gracilis Rectus*, to the *Vastus Externus*, *Cruralis*, *Membranosus*, and forepart of the *Glutans Minor*.

The third rises almost from the same part of the *Crural*, and loses it self in the middle of the *Gracilis Rectus*, *Cruralis*, and *Vastus Externus*.

The Crural having sent out these three Branches, gives several Branches to the *Sartorius*, to the *Gracilis Posterior*, but the greatest goes to the *Vastus Externus*.

As the Crural descends, it sinks the deeper in the hind-part of the Thigh; passing through the Tendons of the *Triceps*: being come to the Ham, the first Branch it sends out is spread on the hind-part of the Thigh-Bone, and it goes to the little Head of the *Biceps*; then it casts out several other Branches, which lose themselves in the Fat, and in the Extremities of the Muscles behind the *Femur*. Under the Ham it sends out two *Poplitea*, which go round the Knee, the one in the inside, the other in the outside. It casts out, a little lower, several other Branches, of which some go to the beginning of the *Gemini*, of the *Soleus*, *Plantaris*, and *Poplitans*, and the rest surround the *Tibia* on all sides.

Then it divides into two Branches, of which the first passes through the Membrane which joins the *Tibia* and *Perone* together, upon which it continues its way, giving Branches to the *Tibialis Externus*, and to the *Extensores Digitorum*.

The second Branch divides into two more, the one External, the other Internal.

The External, after it hath given Branches to the *Soleus*, to the *Peronans Posterior*, and to the *Flexor Pollicis*,

pierces the Membrane between the *Tibia* and *Perone*; rises upon the External Ankle, to spread it self upon the upper part of the Foot.

The Internal, as it descends, gives Branches to the *Soleus*, to the *Flexores Digitorum*, to the *Tibialis Posterior*; then it passes by the Cavity of the *Perone*, where it divides into two Branches, of which one passes under the *Tenar* to the Great Toe, the other passes between the *Musculus Brevis* and the *Hypotenar*, and is distributed into the other three Toes.

This is the Order and Distribution of the principal Arteries in the Body, each of which are subdivided into others, and these again into others, till at last the whole Body is over-spread with most minute Capillary Arteries, concerning which there are two things remarkable. First, That the Branches which go off at any small distance from the Trunk of an Artery, unite their Channels into one Trunk again, whose Branches likewise communicate with one another, and with others, as before. By this means, when any small Artery is obstructed, the Blood is brought by the communicating Branches to the Parts below the Obstruction, which must otherwise have been deprived of their Nourishment. These Inosculations are apparent every where, but chiefly in the *Uterus*,

*Uterus, Mesentery, and Brain.* It is the same thing with the *Veins.*

The other thing is, That the Summ of the Orifices of the Branches of any Artery is greater than the Orifice of the Trunk from which they came ; and upon this consideration, the Velocity of the Blood is mightily diminished as it removes from the Heart. The Proportions the Primary Branches bear to one another, and the *Aorta* to the *Cava* and *Pulmonary Artery*, are as follow.

<i>The Aorta</i>	<u>100000</u>
Right Subclavian Artery	20101.9
Left Carotide	10016
Left Axillary	14456.7
Bronchial Artery	434.2
24 Intercostals, each	434.2, 10420.8
Cæliack	4830.3
Mesenterick	7307.8
Right Emulgent	4839
Left Emulgent	4639
Inferior Mesenterick	3015
6 Lumbals, each	434.2, 2605.2
Left Iliack	9739.8
Right Iliack	10535
<i>The Summ of all the Branches</i>	<u>102740.7</u>
The Pulmonary Artery	139291.8
The Ascending <i>Cava</i>	92373
The Descending <i>Cava</i>	92373

... of the Veins in General and A few O  
f the Veins in General, and O

### S E C T. VII.

#### *Of the Veins in General.*

THE Veins are only a Continuation of the extreme Capillary Arteries, reflected back again towards the Heart, and uniting their Channels as they approach it, till at last they all form three large Veins, the *Cava Descendens* which brings the Blood back from all the Parts above the Heart; The *Cava Ascendens* which brings the Blood from all the Parts below the Heart; and the *Porta* which carries the Blood to the Liver.

The Coats of the Veins are the same with those of the Arteries, only the Muscular Coat is as thin in all the Veins, as it is in the Capillary Arteries; the pressure of the Blood against the sides of the Veins being less than that against the sides of the Arteries.

In the Veins there is no Pulse, because the Blood is thrown into them with a continued Stream, and because it moves from a narrow Chanel to a wider.

The Capillary Veins unite with one another, as has been said of the Capillary Arteries.

In all the Veins which are perpendicular to the Horizon, excepting those of the *Uterus* and of the *Porta*, there are

small Membranes or Valves; sometimes there is only one, sometimes there are two, and sometimes three placed together, like so many half Thimbles stuck to the sides of the Veins, with their mouths towards the Heart. In the motion of the Blood towards the Heart, they are pressed close to the sides of the Vein; but if the Blood should fall back, it must fill the Valves; and they being distended, stop up the Chanel, so that no Blood can repaſs them.

## S E C T. VIII.

*Of the Cava Descendens, or Superior.*

FOR the more easie describing of the Veins, I shall begin at their Trunks, and proceed to their Branches contrary to the Motion of the Blood in them, and first of the *Cava Descendens*, or that in which the Blood returns from all the Parts above the Heart.

The Trunk of the *Cava Descendens* joins the Trunk of the *Cava Ascendens*, and both together open into the Right Auricle of the Heart. On the Inside of the Vein where the Trunks join, there is a small Protuberance, which hinders the Blood that comes from the upper parts, from falling upon that from the inferiour parts, but diverts both

both into the Auricle. Where the *Cava Descendens* joins the Auricle, it receives the Coronary Vein of the Heart.

As soon as it pierces the *Pericardium*, it receives the *Azygos* or *Vena sine Pari*; this Vein runs along the right side of the *Vertebre* of the *Thorax*, and is made by the union of the Veins of the Ribs on each side. Its small end, at the *Diaphragma*, is divided into two Branches, which communicate with a Vein, sometimes from the *Emulgents*, and sometimes from the *Cava Ascendens*.

The *Cava Descendens* receives next the *Intercostalis Superior*, which is distributed in the Interstices of the four first Ribs, to which the *Azygos* comes not. Remark, That the Branches both of the one and the other run in the *Sinus's* which are on the lower sides of the Ribs.

*Sannicbellius* hath observed, that the Trunk of the *Cava Descendens* receives a Branch call'd *Pneumonica*; 'tis this Branch which accompanies the *Arteria Bronchialis* of M. *Ruyssch*.

S E C T.

## SECT. IX.

Of the Venæ Subclaviæ, Jugulares, and  
their Branches.

THE Trunk of the *Cava Descendens*, as soon as it comes to the *Clavicula*, where it is sustained by the *Thymus*, is divided into two Branches, the one goes to the right, the other to the left; they are call'd *Subclavia*, which receive several other Branches.

The first is the *Mammaria*, which comes sometimes into the *Cava*, before it divides into the *Subclavia*; this Vein is distributed in the Breasts, and frequently it goes lower, and makes an *Anastomosis* with some Branches of the *Epigastrica*.

The second is the *Mediastina*, which is ordinarily one opening into the Trunk of the *Cava*; it goes to the *Mediastinum* and *Thymus*.

The third is the *Cervicalis* or *Vertebralis*, which goes up the *Vertebra* of the Neck, and casts some Branches by the by to the *Medulla Spinalis*.

The fourth is the *Muscula Inferior*, which comes sometimes into the *Jugulars*, 'tis distributed through the Inferior Muscles of the Neck, and the Superior of the Breast. The Branch that answers

answers this is call'd *Muscula Posterior*, because 'tis distributed in the Muscles which are in the hind-part of the Neck.

After that the *Rami Subclavii* are come out of the Cavity of the Breast, they are called *Axillares*; they receive the *Scapularis Internus* and *Externus* which goes to the Muscles of the *Scapula*, and to the Glands in the Arm-pits: Then they are divided into two Branches; the Superior is call'd *Cephalica*, and the Inferior *Basilica*.

Into the *Basilica* open the *Thoracica Superior*, which goes to the Dugs and Muscles of the Breast. The *Thoracica Inferior*, which spreads it self upon the side of the Breast, by several Branches which communicate by *Anastomosis* with the Branches of the *Azygos*, under the Muscles of the Breast.

The *Subclavii* receive also the *Jugulares Externi* & *Interni*, which go to the Head.

The *Jugulares Externi* ascend towards the Ears, where they divide in two Branches, the one Internal, the other External. The Internal goes to the Muscles of the Mouth and of the *Os Hyoides*. The External lying upon the *Parotides*, divide into two Branches, of which one is spread through all the Face, and the Branches of the one side unites with

with those on the other side, and form the *Vena Frontis*: The other Branch goes to the Temples and hind-Head.

The *Jugulares Interni* ascend to the Basis of the *Cranium*, where they are divided into two Branches, of which the greatest open into the *Sinus Laterales* of the *Dura Mater* by the Holes through which the eighth Pair of Nerves come out; the least goes to the *Pia Mater*, by the Hole which is nigh the *Cella Turcica*.

#### S E C T. X.

#### Of the Veins of the Arms and Hands.

THE *Basilica* and *Cephalica* are the two principal Veins of the Arms and Hands.

The *Cephalica* creeps along the Arm, between the Skin and the Muscles; it divides into two Branches.

The External Branch goes down to the Wrist, where it joins the *Basilica*, and turns up to the Back of the Hand, where it gives a Branch which makes the *Salvitella*, between the Ring-Finger and the Little-Finger. The Ancients used to open this Vein in Diseases of the Head, in continued and intermitting Fevers; but the Moderns approve not of this particular Practice; since the

know-

knowledge of the Circulation of the Blood, there is no difference whether one be Blooded in the *Cephalica*, *Median*, or *Basilica*.

The Internal Branch of the *Cephalica*, together with a Branch of the *Basilica*, makes the *Median*.

The *Basilica*, which is the Inferior Branch of the *Axillaris*, divides into three Branches under the Tendon of the *Musculus Pectoralis*.

The first Branch accompanies the fourth Branch of Nerves that goes to the Arm.

The second is call'd *Profundus*; it reaches below the Elbow, where it divides into two branches; The one External, which goes to the Thumb, the Fore-finger, and to the *Musculi Extensori Carpi*; The other Internal, which goes to the Middle-finger, to the Ring-finger, to the Little-finger, and to the inner Muscles of the Hand.

The third Branch is call'd *Subcutaneus*, towards the inner Condyle of the Arm; it divides into the *Ramus Anterior* and *Posterior*: The first goes under the Muscles of the *Ulna* to the Little-finger, where it joins a branch of the *Cephalica*; the second, near to the Elbow, sends out a branch which goes to the Wrist; then it unites with the *Cephalica Interior*, and forms the *Median*.

The

The *Mediana*, which is made of the *Cephalica Interior*, and the second branch of the *Ramus Subcutaneus* of the *Basilica*, divides into two branches upon the *Radius*; the one External, call'd *Cephalica Pollicis*, which runs between the Thumb and the Fore-finger. The other Internal, which goes between the Ring-finger and the Middle-finger, and sometimes between this last and the Fore-finger.

S E C T. XI.

Of the Trunk of the Cava Ascendens,  
or Interior.

THE Trunk of the *Cava Ascendens*, between the Heart and the *Diaphragma*, does not lie upon the *Vertebrae*, but runs at a small distance from them. At the *Diaphragma* it receives the *Phrenica* or *Diaphragmatica*. When it has pierc'd the *Diaphragma*, it receives some large branches from the Liver; then the *Cava Ascendens* accompanies the Great Artery from the Liver to the fourth *Vertebra* of the Loins, where it divides into two great branches call'd *Iliaci*; but before this division, it receives four branches from each side.

The first is the *Vena Adiposa*, or *Renalis*, which is spread on the Coat and Fat that covers the Reins.

The

The second is the *Vena Emulgens*, which goes to the Kidney, where it divides into several more branches.

The third is the *Vena Spermatica*, of which we have already spoken.

The fourth is the *Vena Lumbaris*, which is not always one, but often two or three on each side, which they divide into Superior and Interior; they are bestowed on the Muscles of the Loins, and on the *Peritoneum*. They sometimes call the last branch of the *Lumbaris*, *Muscula Superior*.

There are some Anatomists that have observed, that there is a branch of the *Lumbaris* that enters the Cavity of the *Vertebra*, and which ascends to the Brain; which gave them occasion to think, against all probability, that the Seed descended by that Vein from the Brain.

A little below the *Emulgents*, the great Artery goes above the *Cava*; and then the *Cava* divides into two branches call'd *Iliaci*, because they pass above the *Ilia* to go to the Thighs. Near this division they receive one or two branches call'd *Vena Sacra*; they go the *Medulla* of the *Os Sacrum*.

Then the *Vena Iliaca* divide into two branches, the one Internal, the other External. The Internal receives two branches, the *Muscula Media*, which is spread through the Muscles of the Thigh,

Thigh, the *Hypogastrica*, which is sometimes double, it's spread about the *Sphincter* of the *Anus*; wherefore 'tis called their *Hemorrhoidalis Externa*. The *Hypogastrica* is spread also upon the Body of the Bladder, upon the *Matrix* and its Neck.

The External branch of the *Iliaca* receives three branches, two before it goes out of the *Peritoneum*, and the third after it goes out of it.

The first is the *Vena Epigastrica*, which comes rarely into the *Cruralis*, it goes to the *Peritoneum*, ascends to the *Musculi Recti*, where it Rencontres the *Mammaria*, with which it communicates by *Anastomosis*.

The second is the *Vena Pudenda*, 'tis spread upon the Parts of Generation.

The third is the *Muscula Inferior*, it goes towards the Articulation of the *Femur*, and is distributed to the Muscles of this Part.

The *Iliaca Exterior*, after it hath received all these branches, takes the name *Cruralis*, and then receives six branches more.

The first is the *Vena Saphena*, which goes down under the Skin along the inside of the Thigh and Leg, accompanied with a Nerve which loses it self at the inner Ankle. The *Saphena* turns towards the upper Part of the Foot, where

where it gives several branches, of which some go to the great Toe.

The second is the *Ischia Minor*, this Vein is little; 'tis spent on the Muscles and Skin which are about the upper Joint of the *Femur*.

The third is the *Muscula Externa*, because it goes to the External Muscles of the Thigh, on the other side of the *Cruralis*, just opposite to the beginning of this Vein, there goes out another called *Muscula Interna*, which goes to the Internal Muscles of the Thigh.

The fourth is the *Poplitea* made of two different branches united together; it goes straight down by the Ham to the Heel; it lies pretty deep, upon which account it can hardly be opened. The branches which appear in this place are not of this Vein.

The fifth is the *Suralis*, which is pretty big, and which divides into two branches, the one External which is least, the other Internal which is biggest. Each of these branches divide again into two more; the one External, the other Internal.

The *Suralis* distributes its branches upon the fat of the Leg, and makes with the branches of the *Poplitea*, all those *Plexus* of Veins which are conspicuous, on the upper Part of the Foot.

The

The sixth and last branch of the *Crus-ralis* is the *Iscias Major*, which goes also to the Muscles and Fat of the Leg, and is divided afterwards into several branches, which are distributed to the Toes.

## S E C T. XII.

*Of the Vena Porta.*

THus we have described the Veins which come from all the Parts of the Body, except the Stomach, Spleen, *Pancreas*, *Omentum*, and *Intestines*, from which Parts the Blood is carried by the Branches of the *Porta* to the Liver, to be returned by the branches of the *Cava* in the Liver, after that the Bile has been separated from it, (as has been said in the *Section of the Liver*.)

The *Vena Porta* was so called by the Ancients, because they thought that it brought the Chyle by its *Meseraick* Branches from the *Intestines* to the Liver, through whose Substance 'tis spread. As it rises out of the Liver, it receives two small Veins from the *Vesica Fellea* call'd *Cystica Gemella*, one from the Stomach, call'd *Gastrica Dextra*; then advancing a little to the left, its trunk divides into two branches, of which the least, call'd *Ramus Spenicus*, goes

goes to the left *Hypochondrium*: And the greatest called *Mesentericus* goes to the right. The *Ramus Splenicus* so called, because it carries the Blood from the Spleen, receives two branches called *Gastrica Minor & Major*, which are spread through all the Stomach. A branch of the *Gastrica Major* makes the *Coronariae Stomachicae* at the upper Orifice of the Stomach. It receives three branches more, two from the *Omentum* and *Colon*, and the third from the *Pancreas*.

Then the *Splenicus* divides into two branches; the one Superior, the other Inferior.

The Superior receives the *Vas Breve*, and some other branches which come from the Spleen.

The Inferior receives two branches, viz. The *Epiplois Sinistra*, which is spread through the back part of the *Omentum*, and that Part of the *Colon* which is under the Stomach. The other branch is the *Gastro-Epiplois Sinistra*, which is also spread upon the *Omentum* and upon the Stomach; it makes sometimes the *Vena Hemorrhoidalis Interna*. The rest of this Inferior branch comes from the Substance of the Spleen.

The right branch of the *Porta* called *Vena Mesenterica*, before it divides, receives the *Gastro-Epiplois Dextra*, which is spread in the *Omentum* and lower Part

Part of the Stomach; as also the *Intestinalis*, which comes from the *Duodenum*, and the *Jejunum*; it receives some branches from the *Omentum* and *Pancreas*.

Then the *Mesenterica* divides into three great branches, which run betwixt the Duplicature of the *Mesenterium*, two of them come from the right side which divide into fourteen branches, and these are again divided into an infinity of others less which are called *Meseraice*; they creep upon the *Jejunum*, *Ilium*, *Cecum*, and Part of the *Colon*.

The third and last branch of the *Vena Mesenterica*, is spread through the middle of the *Mesenterium*, to that Part of the *Colon* which is on the left side, to the *Rectum*, down to the *Anus*, where it forms the *Hemorrhoidales Internae*.

*F I N I S.*

BOOKS Printed for  
W. Keblewhite.

MR. Farbrother's *Affize Sermon at  
Winchester, on Psal. II. 12.* 4to.

MYSEVM  
BRITAN  
NIVVM  
Mr. Bramton's Sermon before the  
Lord-Mayor, on *Prov. xxvi. 1.* 4to.

Satan Disrobed from his Disguise of  
Light: Or, The Quakers' last Shift to  
cover their monstrous Heresies, laid fully  
open. By the Author of the *Snake in  
the Grass.* 4to.

Mr. Clutterbuck's Rational Vindication  
of the *Liturgy.* 8vo.

— His Explanation of the Diffi-  
cult Phrases in the Book of *Psalms.* 8vo.

A Detection of the Errors of *A-  
tonia Bourignon.* In Three Parts.

Several Essays on the Belief of God  
and Providence. 8vo.

Fifteen Sermons on several Occa-  
sions. 8vo.

These Three by Dr. Cockburn.

Regicides no Saints nor Martyrs. 8vo.